



Collins

BESTSELLING BILINGUAL DICTIONARIES

easy learning

French Grammar

OVER
**TWO
MILLION**
COPIES SOLD
easy learning

IN COLOUR



Start using Collins online
www.collinslanguage.com **FREE**



Collins

Collins French Grammar

HarperCollins Publishers
 Westerhill Road
 Bishopbriggs
 Glasgow
 G64 2QT
 Great Britain

First Edition 2004

Reprint 15 14 13 12 11 10

© HarperCollins Publishers 2004

ISBN 978-0-00-719644-9

Collins® and Bank of English® are
 registered trademarks of
 HarperCollins Publishers Limited

www.collinslanguage.com

A catalogue record for this book is available
 from the British Library

Typeset by Davidson Pre-Press, Glasgow

Printed in Italy by Rotalito Lombarda SpA

Acknowledgements

We would like to thank those authors and
 publishers who kindly gave permission for
 copyright material to be used in the Collins
 Word Web. We would also like to thank
 Times Newspapers Ltd for providing
 valuable data.

All rights reserved. No part of this
 publication may be reproduced, stored
 in a retrieval system or transmitted, in
 any form or by any means, electronic,
 mechanical, photocopying, recording or
 otherwise, without the prior permission
 of the publisher. This book is sold subject
 to the conditions that it shall not, by way
 of trade or otherwise, be lent, re-sold, hired
 out or otherwise circulated without the
 publisher's prior consent in any form of
 binding or cover other than that in which
 it is published and without a similar
 condition including this condition being
 imposed on the subsequent purchaser.

Entered words that we have reason to
 believe constitute trademarks have been
 designated as such. However, neither the
 presence nor absence of such designation
 should be regarded as affecting the legal
 status of any trademark.

When you buy a Collins dictionary
 or thesaurus and register on
 www.collinslanguage.com for the free
 online and digital services, you will not
 be charged by HarperCollins for access to
 Collins free Online Dictionary content or
 Collins free Online Thesaurus content on
 that website. However, your operator's
 charges for using the internet on your
 computer will apply. Costs vary from
 operator to operator. HarperCollins is not
 responsible for any charges levied by online
 service providers for accessing Collins free
 Online Dictionary or Collins free Online
 Thesaurus on www.collinslanguage.com
 using these services.

HarperCollins does not warrant
 that the functions contained in
 www.collinslanguage.com content
 will be uninterrupted or error free,
 that defects will be corrected, or that
 www.collinslanguage.com or the server
 that makes it available are free of viruses
 or bugs. HarperCollins is not responsible
 for any access difficulties that may be
 experienced due to problems with network,
 web, online or mobile phone connections.

PUBLISHING DIRECTOR
 Lorna Knight

EDITORIAL DIRECTOR
 Michela Clari

MANAGING EDITOR
 Maree Airlie

CONTRIBUTORS
 Wendy Lee
 Gaëlle Amiot-Cadey
 Di Larkin

We would like to give special thanks to
 Di Larkin, Foreign Languages Consultant,
 and Irene Muir, Faculty Head, Belmont
 House School, for all their advice on
 teaching practice in today's classroom.
 Their contributions have been invaluable
 in the writing of this book.

CONTENTS

Foreword for language teachers v

Introduction for students vi

Glossary of grammar terms viii

Nouns

Using nouns 1

Gender 2

Forming plurals 9

Articles

Different types of article 12

The definite article: **le, la, l' and les** 13

The indefinite article: **un, une and des** 19

The partitive article: **du, de la, de l' and des** 22

Adjectives

Using adjectives 25

Making adjectives agree 27

Word order with adjectives 32

Comparatives and superlatives of adjectives 34

Demonstrative adjectives: **ce, cette, cet and ces** 37

Possessive adjectives 39

Indefinite adjectives 41

Pronouns

Personal pronouns: subject 43

Personal pronouns: direct object 47

Personal pronouns: indirect object 49

Emphatic pronouns 51

Possessive pronouns 54

en and y 56

Using different types of pronoun together 59

Indefinite pronouns 60

Relative pronouns 62

Demonstrative pronouns 65

Verbs

The three conjugations 69

The present tense 71

The present tense: regular **-er** (first conjugation) verbs 72

The present tense: regular **-ir** (second conjugation) verbs 74

The present tense: regular **-re** (third conjugation) verbs 76

The present tense: spelling changes in **-er** verbs 78

The present tense: irregular verbs 82

The imperative 85

Reflexive verbs 88

The imperfect tense	92
The future tense	98
The conditional	105
The perfect tense	111
The pluperfect tense	119
The passive	122
The present participle	125
Impersonal verbs	127
The subjunctive	129
Verbs followed by an infinitive	133
Other uses of the infinitive	137
Negatives	138
Questions	142
How to ask a question in French	142
Question words	146
Adverbs	152
How adverbs are used	152
How adverbs are formed	152
Comparatives and superlatives of adverbs	155
Some common adverbs	157
Word order with adverbs	160
Prepositions	162
How prepositions are used	162
à, de and en	163
Some other common prepositions	171
Prepositions consisting of more than one word	177
Prepositions after verbs	178
Prepositions after adjectives	183
Conjunctions	184
et, mais, ou, parce que and si	184
Some other common conjunctions	186
The conjunction que	187
Numbers	188
Time and date	190
Some common difficulties	193
The alphabet	198
Main index	199
Verb tables	1-94
Verb index	95-105
Note on trademarks	

Entered words which we have reason to believe constitute trademarks have been designated as such. However, neither the presence nor the absence of such designation should be regarded as affecting the legal status of any trademark.

FOREWORD FOR LANGUAGE TEACHERS

The *Easy Learning French Grammar* is designed to be used with both young and adult learners, as a group reference book to complement your course book during classes, or as a recommended text for self-study and homework/coursework.

The text specifically targets learners from *ab initio* to intermediate or GCSE level, and therefore its structural content and vocabulary have been matched to the relevant specifications up to and including Higher GCSE.

The approach aims to develop knowledge and understanding of grammar and your learners' ability to apply it by:

- defining parts of speech at the start of each major section with examples in English to clarify concepts
- minimizing the use of grammar terminology and providing clear explanations of terms both within the text and in the **Glossary**
- illustrating all points with examples (and their translations) based on topics and contexts which are relevant to beginner and intermediate course content

The text helps you develop positive attitudes to grammar learning in your classes by:

- giving clear, easy-to-follow explanations
- prioritizing content according to relevant specifications for the levels
- sequencing points to reflect course content, e.g. verb tenses
- highlighting useful **Tips** to deal with common difficulties
- summarizing **Key points** at the end of sections to consolidate learning

In addition to fostering success and building a thorough foundation in French grammar, the optional **Grammar Extra** sections will encourage and challenge your learners to further their studies to higher and advanced levels.

INTRODUCTION FOR STUDENTS

Whether you are starting to learn French for the very first time, brushing up on topics you have studied in class, or revising for your GCSE exams, the *Easy Learning French Grammar* is here to help. This easy-to-use guide takes you through all the basics you will need to speak and understand modern, everyday French.

Newcomers can sometimes struggle with the technical terms they come across when they start to explore the grammar of a new language. The *Easy Learning French Grammar* explains how to get to grips with all the parts of speech you will need to know, using simple language and cutting out jargon.

The text is divided into sections, each dealing with a particular area of grammar. Each section can be studied individually, as numerous cross-references in the text point you to relevant points in other sections of the book for further information.

Every major section begins with an explanation of the area of grammar covered on the following pages. For quick reference, these definitions are also collected together on pages viii–xii in a glossary of essential grammar terms.

What is a verb?

A **verb** is a 'doing' word which describes what someone or something does, what someone or something is, or what happens to them, for example, *be, sing, live*.

Each grammar point in the text is followed by simple examples of real French, complete with English translations, helping you understand the rules. Underlining has been used in examples throughout the text to highlight the grammatical point being explained.

- If you are talking about a part of your body, you usually use a word like *my* or *his* in English, but in French you usually use the definite article.

Tourne la tête à gauche.

Turn your head to the left.

Il s'est cassé le bras.

He's broken his arm.

J'ai mal à la gorge.

I've got a sore throat.

In French, as with any foreign language, there are certain pitfalls which have to be avoided. **Tips** and **Information** notes throughout the text are useful reminders of the things that often trip learners up.

Tip

If you are in doubt as to which form of *you* to use, it is safest to use **vous** and you will not offend anybody.

Key points sum up all the important facts about a particular area of grammar, to save you time when you are revising and help you focus on the main grammatical points.

Key points

- ✓ With masculine singular nouns → use **un**.
- ✓ With feminine singular nouns → use **une**.
- ✓ With plural nouns → use **des**.
- ✓ **un, une** and **des** → change to **de** or **d'** in negative sentences.
- ✓ The indefinite article is not usually used when you say what jobs people do, or in exclamations with **quel**.

If you think you would like to continue with your French studies to a higher level, check out the **Grammar Extra** sections. These are intended for advanced students who are interested in knowing a little more about the structures they will come across beyond GCSE.

Grammar Extra!

If you want to use an adjective after **quelque chose, rien, quelqu'un** and **personne**, you link the words with **de**.

quelqu'un d'important

someone important

quelque chose d'intéressant

something interesting

rien d'amusant

nothing funny

Finally, the supplement at the end of the book contains **Verb Tables**, where 93 important French verbs (both regular and irregular) are declined in full. Examples show you how to use these verbs in your own work. If you are unsure of how a verb declines in French, you can look up the **Verb Index** on pages 95–105 to find either the conjugation of the verb itself, or a cross-reference to a model verb, which will show you the patterns that verb follows.

We hope that you will enjoy using the *Easy Learning French Grammar* and find it useful in the course of your study.

GLOSSARY OF GRAMMAR TERMS

ABSTRACT NOUN a word used to refer to a quality, idea, feeling or experience, rather than a physical object, for example, *size, reason, happiness*. Compare with **concrete noun**.

ADJECTIVE a 'describing' word that tells you more about a person or thing, such as their appearance, colour, size or other qualities, for example, *pretty, blue, big*.

ADVERB a word usually used with verbs, adjectives or other adverbs that gives more information about when, where, how or in what circumstances something happens, for example, *quickly, happily, now*.

AGREE (to) to change word endings according to whether you are referring to masculine, feminine, singular or plural people or things.

AGREEMENT changing word endings according to whether you are referring to masculine, feminine, singular or plural people or things.

APOSTROPHE s an ending ('s) added to a noun to show who or what someone or something belongs to, for example, *Danielle's dog, the doctor's wife, the book's cover*.

ARTICLE a word like *the, a* and *an*, which is used in front of a noun. See also **definite article**, **indefinite article** and **partitive article**.

AUXILIARY VERB a verb such as *be, have* and *do* when it is used with a main verb to form tenses, negatives and questions.

BASE FORM the form of the verb without any endings added to it, for

example, *walk, have, be, go*. Compare with **infinitive**.

CARDINAL NUMBER a number used in counting, for example, *one, seven, ninety*. Compare with **ordinal number**.

CLAUSE a group of words containing a verb.

COMPARATIVE an adjective or adverb with *-er* on the end of it or *more* or *less* in front of it that is used to compare people, things or actions, for example, *slower, less important, more carefully*.

COMPOUND NOUN a word for a living being, thing or idea, which is made up of two or more words, for example, *tin-opener, railway station*.

CONCRETE NOUN a word that refers to an object you can touch with your hand, rather than to a quality or idea, for example, *ball, map, apples*. Compare with **abstract noun**.

CONDITIONAL a verb form used to talk about things that would happen or would be true under certain conditions, for example, *I would help you if I could*. It is also used to say what you would like or need, for example, *Could you give me the bill?*

CONJUGATE (to) to give a verb different endings according to whether you are referring to *I, you, they* and so on, and according to whether you are referring to past, present or future, for example, *I have, she had, they will have*.

CONJUGATION a group of verbs which have the same endings as each other or change according to the same pattern.

CONJUNCTION a word such as *and, because* or *but* that links two words or phrases of a similar type or two parts of a sentence, for example, *Diane and I have been friends for years*; *I left because I was bored*.

CONSONANT a letter of the alphabet which is not a vowel, for example, *b, f, m, s, v* etc. Compare with **vowel**.

CONSTRUCTION an arrangement of words together in a phrase or sentence.

DEFINITE ARTICLE the word *the*. Compare with **indefinite article**.

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE one of the words *this, that, these* and *those* used with a noun to point out a particular person or thing, for example, *this woman, that dog*.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN one of the words *this, that, these* and *those* used instead of a noun to point out people or things, for example, *That looks fun*.

DIRECT OBJECT a noun referring to the person or thing affected by the action described by a verb, for example, *She wrote her name*; *I shut the window*. Compare with **indirect object**.

DIRECT OBJECT PRONOUN a word such as *me, him, us* and *them* which is used instead of a noun to stand in for the person or thing most directly affected by the action described by the verb. Compare with **indirect object pronoun**.

EMPHATIC PRONOUN a word used instead of a noun when you want to emphasize something, for example, *Is this for me?*; *'Who broke the*

window?' – *'He did.'* Also called **stressed pronoun**.

ENDING a form added to a verb, for example, *go* —> *gos*, and to adjectives and nouns depending on whether they refer to masculine, feminine, singular or plural things.

EXCLAMATION a word, phrase or sentence that you use to show you are surprised, shocked, angry and so on, for example, *Wow!*; *How dare you!*; *What a surprise!*

FEMININE a form of noun, pronoun or adjective that is used to refer to a living being, thing or idea that is not classed as masculine.

FUTURE a verb tense used to talk about something that will happen or will be true.

GENDER whether a noun, pronoun or adjective is feminine or masculine.

IMPERATIVE the form of a verb used when giving orders and instructions, for example, *Shut the door!*; *Sit down!*; *Don't go!*

IMPERFECT one of the verb tenses used to talk about the past, especially in descriptions, and to say what was happening or used to happen, for example, *I used to walk to school*; *It was sunny at the weekend*. Compare with **perfect**.

IMPERSONAL VERB one which does not refer to a real person or thing and where the subject is represented by *it*, for example, *It's going to rain*; *It's 10 o'clock*.

INDEFINITE ADJECTIVE one of a small group of adjectives used to talk about people or things in a general way, without saying who or what they are, for example, *several, all, every*.

INDEFINITE ARTICLE the words *a* and *an*. Compare with **definite article**.

INDEFINITE PRONOUN a small group of pronouns such as *everything*, *nobody* and *something*, which are used to refer to people or things in a general way, without saying exactly who or what they are.

INDIRECT OBJECT a noun used with verbs that take two objects. For example, in *I gave the carrot to the rabbit*, *the rabbit* is the indirect object and *carrot* is the direct object. Compare with **direct object**.

INDIRECT OBJECT PRONOUN when a verb has two objects (a direct one and an indirect one), the indirect object pronoun is used instead of a noun to show the person or the thing the action is intended to benefit or harm, for example, *me* in *He gave me a book* and *Can you get me a towel?* Compare with **direct object pronoun**.

INDIRECT QUESTION used to tell someone else about a question and introduced by a verb such as *ask*, *tell* or *wonder*, for example, *He asked me what the time was; I wonder who he is*.

INFINITIVE the form of the verb with *to* in front of it and without any endings added, for example, *to walk*, *to have*, *to be*, *to go*. Compare with **base form**.

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE a question word used with a noun to ask *who?*, *what?* or *which?* for example, *What instruments do you play?*; *Which shoes do you like?*

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN one of the words *who*, *whose*, *whom*, *what* and *which* when they are used instead of a noun to ask questions,

for example, *What's happening?*; *Who's coming?*

INVARIABLE used to describe a form which does not change.

IRREGULAR VERB a verb whose forms do not follow a general pattern or the normal rules. Compare with **regular verb**.

MASCULINE a form of noun, pronoun or adjective that is used to refer to a living being, thing or idea that is not classed as feminine.

NEGATIVE a question or statement which contains a word such as *not*, *never* or *nothing*, and is used to say that something is not happening, is not true or is absent, for example, *I never eat meat; Don't you love me?*

NOUN a 'naming' word for a living being, thing or idea, for example, *woman*, *desk*, *happiness*, *Andrew*.

NUMBER used to say how many things you are referring to or where something comes in a sequence. See also **ordinal number** and **cardinal number**.

OBJECT a noun or pronoun which refers to a person or thing that is affected by the action described by the verb. Compare with **direct object**, **indirect object** and **subject**.

OBJECT PRONOUN one of the set of pronouns including *me*, *him* and *them*, which are used instead of the noun as the object of a verb or preposition. Compare with **subject pronoun**.

ORDINAL NUMBER a number used to indicate where something comes in an order or sequence, for example, *first*, *fifth*, *sixteenth*. Compare with **cardinal number**.

PART OF SPEECH a word class, for example, *noun*, *verb*, *adjective*, *preposition*, *pronoun*.

PARTITIVE ARTICLE the words *some* or *any*, used to refer to part of a thing but not all of it, for example, *Have you got any money?*; *I'm going to buy some bread*.

PASSIVE a form of the verb that is used when the subject of the verb is the person or thing that is affected by the action, for example, *we were told*.

PAST PARTICIPLE a verb form which is used to form perfect and pluperfect tenses and passives, for example, *watched*, *swum*. Some past participles are also used as adjectives, for example, *a broken watch*.

PERFECT one of the verb tenses used to talk about the past, especially about actions that took place and were completed in the past. Compare with **imperfect**.

PERSON one of the three classes: the first person (*I*, *we*), the second person (*you* singular and *you* plural), and the third person (*he*, *she*, *it* and *they*).

PERSONAL PRONOUN one of the group of words including *I*, *you* and *they* which are used to refer to yourself, the people you are talking to, or the people or things you are talking about.

PLUPERFECT one of the verb tenses used to describe something that *had* happened or had been true at a point in the past, for example, *I'd forgotten to finish my homework*.

PLURAL the form of a word which is used to refer to more than one

person or thing. Compare with **singular**.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE one of the words *my*, *your*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *our* or *their*, used with a noun to show that one person or thing belongs to another.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUN one of the words *mine*, *yours*, *hers*, *his*, *ours* or *theirs*, used instead of a noun to show that one person or thing belongs to another.

PREPOSITION is a word such as *at*, *for*, *with*, *into* or *from*, which is usually followed by a noun, pronoun or, in English, a word ending in *-ing*. Prepositions show how people and things relate to the rest of the sentence, for example, *She's at home; a tool for cutting grass; It's from David*.

PRESENT a verb form used to talk about what is true at the moment, what happens regularly, and what is happening now, for example, *I'm a student; I travel to college by train; I'm studying languages*.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE a verb form ending in *-ing* which is used in English to form verb tenses, and which may be used as an adjective or a noun, for example, *What are you doing?*; *the setting sun; Swimming is easy!*

PRONOUN a word which you use instead of a noun, when you do not need or want to name someone or something directly, for example, *it*, *you*, *none*.

PROPER NOUN the name of a person, place, organization or thing. Proper nouns are always written with a capital letter, for example, *Kevin*, *Glasgow*, *Europe*, *London Eye*.

QUESTION WORD a word such as *why, where, who, which* or *how* which is used to ask a question.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUN a word ending in *-self* or *-selves*, such as *myself* or *themselves*, which refers back to the subject, for example, *He hurt himself*.; *Take care of yourself*.

REFLEXIVE VERB a verb where the subject and object are the same, and where the action 'reflects back' on the subject. A reflexive verb is used with a reflexive pronoun such as *myself, yourself, herself*, for example, *I washed myself*.; *He shaved himself*.

REGULAR VERB a verb whose forms follow a general pattern or the normal rules. Compare with **irregular verb**.

RELATIVE PRONOUN a word such as *that, who* or *which*, when it is used to link two parts of a sentence together.

SENTENCE a group of words which usually has a verb and a subject. In writing, a sentence has a capital letter at the beginning and a full stop, question mark or exclamation mark at the end.

SINGULAR the form of a word which is used to refer to one person or thing. Compare with **plural**.

STEM the main part of a verb to which endings are added.

STRESSED PRONOUN used instead of a noun when you want to emphasize something, for example, *Is this for me?*; *'Who broke the window?'* – *'He did.'* Also called **emphatic pronoun**.

SUBJECT the noun in a sentence or phrase that refers to the person or thing that does the action described by the verb or is in the state

described by the verb, for example, *My cat doesn't drink milk*. Compare with **object**.

SUBJECT PRONOUN a word such as *I, he, she* and *they* which carries out the action described by the verb. Pronouns stand in for nouns when it is clear who is being talked about, for example, *My brother isn't here at the moment*. *He'll be back in an hour*. Compare with **object pronoun**.

SUBJUNCTIVE a verb form used in certain circumstances to express some sort of feeling, or to show doubt about whether something will happen or whether something is true. It is only used occasionally in modern English, for example, *If I were you, I wouldn't bother*.; *So be it*.

SUPERLATIVE an adjective or adverb with *-est* on the end of it or *most* or *least* in front of it that is used to compare people, things or actions, for example, *thinnest, most quickly, least interesting*.

SYLLABLE consonant+vowel units that make up the sounds of a word, for example, *ca-the-dral* (3 syllables), *im-po-ssi-ble* (4 syllables).

TENSE the form of a verb which shows whether you are referring to the past, present or future.

VERB a 'doing' word which describes what someone or something does, what someone or something is, or what happens to them, for example, *be, sing, live*.

VOWEL one of the letters *a, e, i, o* or *u*. Compare with **consonant**.

NOUNS

What is a noun?

A **noun** is a 'naming' word for a living being, thing or idea, for example, *woman, happiness, Andrew*.

Using nouns

- In French, all nouns are either **masculine** or **feminine**. This is called their **gender**. Even words for things have a gender.
- Whenever you are using a noun, you need to know whether it is masculine or feminine as this affects the form of other words used with it, such as:
 - adjectives that describe it
 - articles (such as **le** or **une**) that go before it
 - pronouns (such as **il** or **elle**) that replace it
- ➡ For more information on **Adjectives, Articles** or **Pronouns**, see pages 25, 12 and 42.
- You can find information about gender by looking the word up in a dictionary. When you come across a new noun, always learn the word for *the* or *a* that goes with it to help you remember its gender.
 - **le** or **un** before a noun tells you it is masculine
 - **la** or **une** before a noun tells you it is feminine
- We refer to something as **singular** when we are talking about just one of them, and as **plural** when we are talking about more than one. The singular is the form of the noun you will usually find when you look a noun up in the dictionary. As in English, nouns in French change their form in the plural.
- Adjectives, articles and pronouns are also affected by whether a noun is singular or plural.

Tip

Remember that you have to use the right word for *the, a* and so on according to the gender of the French noun.

Gender

1 Nouns referring to people

- Most nouns referring to men and boys are masculine.

<u>un homme</u>	a man
<u>un roi</u>	a king

- Most nouns referring to women and girls are feminine.

<u>une fille</u>	a girl
<u>une reine</u>	a queen

- When the same word is used to refer to either men/boys or women/girls, its gender usually changes depending on the sex of the person it refers to.

<u>un camarade</u>	a (male) friend
<u>une camarade</u>	a (female) friend
<u>un Belge</u>	a Belgian (man)
<u>une Belge</u>	a Belgian (woman)

Grammar Extra!

Some words for people have only one possible gender, whether they refer to a male or a female.

<u>un bébé</u>	a (male or female) baby
<u>un guide</u>	a (male or female) guide
<u>une personne</u>	a (male or female) person
<u>une vedette</u>	a (male or female) star

- In English, we can sometimes make a word masculine or feminine by changing the ending, for example, *Englishman* and *Englishwoman*, or *prince* and *princess*. In French, very often the ending of a noun changes depending on whether it refers to a man or a woman.

<u>un Anglais</u>	an Englishman
<u>une Anglaise</u>	an Englishwoman
<u>un prince</u>	a prince
<u>une princesse</u>	a princess
<u>un employé</u>	a (male) employee
<u>une employée</u>	a (female) employee

➡ For more information on *Masculine and feminine forms of words*, see page 7.

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

2 Nouns referring to animals

- In English we can choose between words like *bull* or *cow*, depending on the sex of the animal we are referring to. In French too there are sometimes separate words for male and female animals.

<u>un taureau</u>	a bull
<u>une vache</u>	a cow

- Sometimes, the same word with different endings is used for male and female animals.

<u>un chien</u>	a (male) dog
<u>une chienne</u>	a (female) dog, a bitch

Tip

When you do not know or care what sex the animal is, you can usually use the masculine form as a general word.

- Words for other animals do not change according to the sex of the animal. Just learn the French word with its gender, which is always the same.

<u>un poisson</u>	a fish
<u>une souris</u>	a mouse

3 Nouns referring to things

- In English, we call all things – for example, *table*, *car*, *book*, *apple* – ‘it’. In French, however, things are either masculine or feminine. As things do not divide into sexes the way humans and animals do, there are no physical clues to help you with their gender in French. Try to learn the gender as you learn the word.

- There are lots of rules to help you:

- words ending in **-e** are generally feminine (une boulangerie a baker's; une banque a bank)
- words ending in a consonant (any letter except *a*, *e*, *i*, *o* or *u*) are generally masculine (un aéroport an airport; un film a film)

- There are some exceptions to these rules, so it is best to check in a dictionary if you are unsure.

► These endings are often found on masculine nouns.

Masculine ending	Examples
-age	<u>un village</u> a village <u>un voyage</u> a journey <u>un étage</u> a floor <u>le fromage</u> cheese BUT: <u>une image</u> a picture <u>une page</u> a page <u>la plage</u> the beach
-ment	<u>un appartement</u> a flat <u>un bâtiment</u> a building <u>le ciment</u> cement <u>un vêtement</u> a garment
-oir	<u>un miroir</u> a mirror <u>un couloir</u> a corridor <u>le soir</u> the evening <u>un mouchoir</u> a handkerchief
-isme	<u>le tourisme</u> tourism <u>le racisme</u> racism
-eau	<u>un cadeau</u> a present <u>un chapeau</u> a hat <u>un gâteau</u> a cake <u>le rideau</u> the curtain BUT: <u>la peau</u> skin <u>l'eau</u> water
-eu	<u>un jeu</u> a game
-ou	<u>un chou</u> a cabbage <u>le genou</u> the knee
-ier	<u>le cahier</u> the exercise book <u>un quartier</u> an area <u>un escalier</u> a staircase
-in	<u>un magasin</u> a shop <u>un jardin</u> a garden <u>un dessin</u> a drawing <u>le vin</u> the wine BUT: <u>la fin</u> the end <u>une main</u> a hand

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

-on	<u>un champignon</u> a mushroom <u>un ballon</u> a ball <u>le citron</u> the lemon BUT: <u>une maison</u> a house <u>la saison</u> the season
------------	--

► The following types of word are also masculine:

- names of the days of the week, and the months and seasons of the year
le lundi Monday
septembre prochain next September
le printemps Spring
- the names of languages
le français French
le portugais Portuguese
Tu apprends le français depuis combien de temps? How long have you been learning French?
- most metric weights and measures
un gramme a gramme
un mètre a metre
un kilomètre a kilometre
- English nouns used in French
le football football
un tee-shirt a tee-shirt
un sandwich a sandwich

► These endings are often found on feminine nouns.

Feminine ending	Examples
-ance -anse -ence -ense	<u>la chance</u> luck, chance <u>une danse</u> a dance <u>la patience</u> patience <u>la défense</u> defence BUT: <u>le silence</u> silence
-ion	<u>une région</u> a region <u>une addition</u> a bill <u>une réunion</u> a meeting <u>la circulation</u> traffic BUT: <u>un avion</u> a plane
-té -tié	<u>une spécialité</u> a speciality <u>la moitié</u> half BUT: <u>un été</u> a summer <u>le pâté</u> pâté

Grammar Extra!

A few words have different meanings depending on whether they are masculine or feminine. These are the most common:

Masculine	Meaning	Example	Feminine	Meaning	Example
un livre	a book	un livre de poche a paperback	une livre	a pound	une livre sterling a pound sterling
un mode	a method	le mode d'emploi the directions for use	la mode	fashion	à la mode in fashion
un poste	a set (TV/radio); a post (job); an extension (phone)	un poste de professeur a teaching job	la poste	post the post office	mettre quelque chose à la poste to post something
un tour	a turn; a walk	faire un tour to go for a walk	une tour	tower	la tour Eiffel the Eiffel Tower

Key points

- ✓ Most nouns referring to men, boys and male animals are masculine; most nouns referring to women, girls and female animals are feminine. The ending of a French noun often changes depending on whether it refers to a male or a female.
- ✓ Generally, words ending in **-e** are feminine and words ending in a consonant are masculine, though there are many exceptions to this rule.
- ✓ These endings are often found on masculine nouns:
-age, -ment, -oir, -sme, -eau, -eu, -ou, -ier, -in and **-on**.
- ✓ These endings are often found on feminine nouns:
-ance, -anse, -ence, -ense, -ion, -té, -tié.
- ✓ Days of the week, months and seasons of the year are masculine. So are languages, most metric weights and measures, and English nouns used in French.

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

4 Masculine and feminine forms of words

- In French there are sometimes very different words for men and women, and for male and female animals, just as in English.

un homme	a man
une femme	a woman
un taureau	a bull
une vache	a cow
un neveu	a nephew
une nièce	a niece

- Many masculine French nouns can be made feminine simply by changing the ending. This is usually done by adding an **-e** to the masculine noun to form the feminine.

un ami	a (male) friend
une amie	a (female) friend
un employé	a (male) employee
une employée	a (female) employee
un Français	a Frenchman
une Française	a Frenchwoman

- If the masculine singular form already ends in **-e**, no further **e** is added.

un élève	a (male) pupil
une élève	a (female) pupil
un camarade	a (male) friend
une camarade	a (female) friend
un collègue	a (male) colleague
une collègue	a (female) colleague

Tip

If a masculine noun ends in a vowel, its pronunciation does not change when an **-e** is added to form the feminine. For example, **ami** and **amie** (meaning *friend*) are both pronounced the same.

If a masculine noun ends with a consonant that is not pronounced, for example, **-d, -s, -r** or **-t**, you DO pronounce that consonant when an **-e** is added in the feminine. For example, in **étudiant** (meaning *student*), you cannot hear the **t**; in **étudiante**, you can hear the **t**.

Tip

Some masculine nouns, such as **voisin** (meaning *neighbour*), end in what is called a **nasal vowel** and an **-n**. With these words, you pronounce the vowel 'through your nose' but DO NOT say the **n**. When an **-e** is added in the feminine – for example, **voisine** – the vowel becomes a normal one instead of a nasal vowel and you DO pronounce the **n**.

5 Some other patterns

- Some changes to endings from masculine to feminine are a little more complicated but still fall into a regular pattern.

Masculine ending	Feminine ending	Example	Meaning
-f	-ve	un veuf/une veuve	a widower/a widow
-x	-se	un époux/une épouse	a husband/a wife
-eur	-euse	un danseur/une danseuse	a (male) dancer/ a (female) dancer
-teur	-teuse -trice	un chanteur/une chanteuse un acteur/une actrice	a (male) singer/ a (female) singer an actor/an actress
-an	-anne	un paysan/une paysanne	a (male) farmer/ a (female) farmer
-ien	-ienne	un Parisien/une Parisienne	a (male) Parisian/ a (female) Parisian
-on	-onne	un lion/une lionne	a lion/a lioness
-er	-ère	un étranger/une étrangère	a (male) foreigner/ a (female) foreigner
-et	-ette	le cadet/la cadette	the youngest (male) child the youngest (female) child
-el	-elle	un professionnel/une professionnelle	a (male) professional/ a (female) professional

Key points

- ✓ Many masculine French nouns can be made to refer to females by adding an **-e**. If the masculine singular form already ends in **-e**, no further **e** is added.
- ✓ The pronunciation of feminine nouns is sometimes different from that of the corresponding masculine nouns.
- ✓ Other patterns include:

-f → -ve	-teur → -teuse or -trice	-er → -ère
-x → -se	-an, -en and -on → -anne	-et → -ette
-eur → -euse	-enne and -onne	-el → -elle

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

Forming plurals

1 Plurals ending in -s

- In English we usually make nouns plural by adding an **-s** to the end (*garden* → *gardens*; *house* → *houses*), although we do have some nouns which are **irregular** and do not follow this pattern (*mouse* → *mice*; *child* → *children*).

Tip

Remember that you have to use **les** with plural nouns in French. Any adjective that goes with the noun has to agree with it, as does any pronoun that replaces it.

⇒ For more information on **Adjectives, Articles and Pronouns**, see pages 25, 12 and 42.

- Most French nouns also form their plural by adding an **-s** to their singular form.

un jardin	a garden
des jardins	gardens
une voiture	a car
des voitures	cars
un hôtel	a hotel
des hôtels	hotels

- If the singular noun ends in **-s**, **-x** or **-z**, no further **-s** is added in the plural.

un fils	a son
des fils	sons
une voix	a voice
des voix	voices
un nez	a nose
des nez	noses

2 Plurals ending in -x

- The following nouns add an **-x** instead of an **-s** in the plural:

- nouns ending in **-eau**

un chapeau	a hat
des chapeaux	hats

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

- most nouns ending in **-eu**

un jeu	a game
des jeux	games

- a FEW nouns ending in **-ou** (MOST nouns ending in **-ou** add **-s** as usual)

un bijou	a jewel
des bijoux	jewels

un caillou	a pebble
des cailloux	pebbles

un chou	a cabbage
des choux	cabbages

un genou	a knee
des genoux	knees

un hibou	an owl
des hiboux	owls

un joujou	a toy
des joujoux	toys

un pou	a louse
des poux	lice

Tip

Adding an **-s** or **-x** to the end of a noun does not usually change the way the word is pronounced. For example, **professeur** and **professeurs** and **chapeau** and **chapeaux** sound just the same when you say them out loud.

- If the singular noun ends in **-al** or **-ail**, the plural usually ends in **-aux**.

un journal	a newspaper
des journaux	newspapers

un animal	an animal
des animaux	animals

un travail	a job
des travaux	jobs

Tip

The plural of **un œil** (an eye) is **des yeux** (eyes).

3 Plural versus singular

- A few words relating to clothing are plural in English but **NOT** in French.

un slip	pants
un short	shorts
un pantalon	trousers

- A few common words are plural in French but **NOT** in English.

les affaires	business
les cheveux	hair
des renseignements	information

Grammar Extra!

When nouns are made up of two separate words, they are called **compound nouns**, for example, **les grands-parents** (meaning *grandparents*), **des ouvre-boîtes** (meaning *tin-openers*). The rules for forming the plural of compound nouns are complicated and it is best to check in a dictionary to see what the plural is.

Key points

- ✓ Most French nouns form their plural by adding an **-s** to their singular form. If the singular noun ends in **-s**, **-x** or **-z**, no further **-s** is added in the plural.
- ✓ Most nouns ending in **-eau** or **-eu** add an **-x** in the plural.
- ✓ Most nouns ending in **-ou** take an **-s** in the plural, with a few exceptions.
- ✓ If the singular noun ends in **-al** or **-ail**, the plural usually ends in **-aux**.
- ✓ Adding an **-s** or **-x** to the end of a noun does not generally affect the way the word is pronounced.
- ✓ A few common words are plural in English but not in French, and vice versa.

ARTICLES

What is an article?

In English, an **article** is one of the words *the*, *a*, and *an* which is given in front of a noun.

Different types of article

► There are three types of article:

- the **definite** article: *the* in English. This is used to identify a particular thing or person.
I'm going to the supermarket.
That's the woman I was talking to.
- the **indefinite** article: *a* or *an* in English, *some* or *any* (or no word at all) in the plural. This is used to refer to something unspecified, or that you do not really know about.

Is there a supermarket near here?

I need a day off.

- the **partitive** article: *some* or *any* (or no word at all) in English. This is used to talk about quantities or amounts.

Can you lend me some sugar?

Did you buy any wine?

Do you like chocolate?

The definite article: **le**, **la**, **l'** and **les**

1 The basic rules

- In English we only have one definite article: *the*. In French, there is more than one definite article to choose from. All French nouns are either masculine or feminine and, just as in English, they can be either singular or plural. The word you choose for *the* depends on whether the noun it is used with is masculine or feminine, singular or plural. This may sound complicated, but it is not too difficult.

➡ For more information on **Nouns**, see page 1.

	with masculine noun	with feminine noun
Singular	le (l')	la (l')
Plural	les	les

Tip

le and **la** change to **l'** when they are used in front of a word starting with a vowel and most words starting with **h**.

- **le** is used in front of **masculine singular nouns**.
- | | |
|------------------|------------|
| le roi | the king |
| le chien | the dog |
| le jardin | the garden |
- **la** is used in front of **feminine singular nouns**.
- | | |
|------------------|-----------|
| la reine | the queen |
| la souris | the mouse |
| la porte | the door |
- **l'** is used in front of **singular nouns that start with a vowel** (*a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, or *u*), whether they are masculine or feminine.
- | | |
|----------------------------|------------|
| l'ami (masculine) | the friend |
| l'eau (feminine) | the water |
| l'étage (masculine) | the floor |
- ❗ Note that **l'** is also used in front of most words starting with **h** but some others take **le** or **la** instead.
- | | |
|-------------------|--------------|
| l'hôpital | the hospital |
| le hamster | the hamster |
| la hi-fi | the stereo |

Tip

It is a good idea to learn the article or the gender with the noun when you come across a word for the first time, so that you know whether it is masculine or feminine. A good dictionary will also give you this information.

- **les** is used in front of plural nouns, whether they are masculine or feminine and whatever letter they start with.

les chiens	the dogs
les portes	the doors
les amis	the friends
les hôtels	the hotels

- ❗ Note that you have to make the noun plural too, just as you would in English. In French, as in English, you usually add an **-s**.

➡ For more information on **Forming plurals**, see page 9.

Tip

When **les** is used in front of a word that starts with a consonant, you DO NOT say the **s** on the end of **les**: **les chiens** the dogs.
When **les** is used in front of a word that starts with a vowel, most words starting with **h**, and the French word **y**, you DO pronounce the **s** on the end of **les**. It sounds like the **z** in the English word **zip**: **les amis** the friends, **les hôtels** the hotels.

2 Using à with le, la, l' and les

- The French word **à** is translated into English in several different ways, including *at* or *to*. There are special rules when you use it together with **le** and **les**.

➡ For more information on the preposition **à**, see page 163.

- When **à** is followed by **le**, the two words become **au**.

au cinéma	to/at the cinema
aux professeurs	to the teachers

- When **à** is followed by **les**, the two words become **aux**.

aux maisons	to the houses
aux étudiants	to the students

- When **à** is followed by **la** or **l'**, the words do not change.

à la bibliothèque	to/at the library
à l'hôtel	to/at the hotel

Tip

le and **la** change to **l'** when they are used in front of a word starting with a vowel and most words starting with **h**.

3 Using de with le, la, l' and les

- The French word **de** is translated into English in several different ways, including *of* and *from*. There are special rules when you use it together with **le** and **les**.

➡ For more information on the preposition **de**, see page 166.

- When **de** is followed by **le**, the two words become **du**.

du cinéma	from/of the cinema
des professeurs	from/of the teachers

- When **de** is followed by **les**, the two words become **des**.

des maisons	from/of the houses
des étudiants	from/of the students

- When **de** is followed by **la** or **l'**, the words do not change.

de la bibliothèque	from/of the library
de l'hôtel	from/of the hotel

Tip

le and **la** change to **l'** when they are used in front of a word starting with a vowel and most words starting with **h**.

Key points

- ✓ With masculine singular nouns → use **le**.
- ✓ With feminine singular nouns → use **la**.
- ✓ With nouns starting with a vowel, most nouns beginning with **h** and the French word **y** → use **l'**.
- ✓ With plural nouns → use **les**.
- ✓ **à + le = au**
à + les = aux
de + le = du
de + les = des

4 Using the definite article

- The definite article in French (**le**, **la**, **l'** and **les**) is used in more or less the same way as we use *the* in English, but it is also used in French in a few places where you might not expect it.
- The definite article is used with words like *prices*, *flu* and *time* that describe qualities, ideas or experiences (called **abstract nouns**) rather than something that you can touch with your hand. Usually, *the* is missed out in English with this type of word.

Les prix montent. Prices are rising.
J'ai la grippe. I've got flu.
Je n'ai pas le temps. I don't have time.

- [?] Note that there are some set phrases using **avoir**, **avec** or **sans** followed by a noun, where the definite article is **NOT** used.

avoir faim to be hungry (*literally: to have hunger*)
avec plaisir with pleasure
sans doute probably (*literally: without doubt*)

- You also use the definite article when you are talking about things like *coffee* or *computers* that you can touch with your hand (called **concrete nouns**) if you are talking generally about that thing. Usually, *the* is missed out in English with this type of word.

Je n'aime pas le café. I don't like coffee.
Les ordinateurs coûtent très cher. Computers are very expensive.
Les professeurs ne gagnent pas beaucoup. Teachers don't earn very much.

- If you are talking about a part of your body, you usually use a word like *my* or *his* in English, but in French you usually use the definite article.

Tourne la tête à gauche. Turn your head to the left.
Il s'est cassé le bras. He's broken his arm.
J'ai mal à la gorge. I've got a sore throat.

- In French you have to use the definite article in front of the names of countries, continents and regions.

la Bretagne Brittany
l'Europe Europe
La France est très belle. France is very beautiful.
J'ai acheté ce poster au Japon. I bought this poster in Japan.
Je viens des États-Unis. I come from the United States.

- [?] Note that if the name of the country comes after the French word **en**, meaning *to* or *in*, you do not use the definite article. **en** is used with the names of countries, continents and regions that are feminine in French.

Je vais en Écosse le mois prochain. I'm going to Scotland next month.
Il travaille en Allemagne. He works in Germany.

- ⇒ For more information on the preposition **en**, see page 168.

- You often use the definite article with the name of school subjects, languages and sports.

Tu aimes les maths? Do you like maths?
J'apprends le français depuis trois ans. I've been learning French for three years.
Mon sport préféré, c'est le foot. My favourite sport is football.

- [?] Note that the definite article is not used after **en**.

Comment est-ce qu'on dit 'fils' en anglais? How do you say 'fils' in English?
Sophie est nulle en chimie. Sophie's no good at chemistry.

- When you use the verb **parler** (meaning *to speak*) in front of the name of the language, you do not always need to use the definite article in French.

Tu parles espagnol? Do you speak Spanish?
Il parle bien l'anglais. He speaks English well.

- You use **le** with dates, and also with the names of the days of the week and the seasons when you are talking about something that you do regularly or that is a habit.

Elle part le 7 mai.

She's leaving on the seventh of May.

Je vais chez ma grand-mère le dimanche.

I go to my grandmother's on Sundays.

- ❓ Note that you do not use the definite article after **en**.

En hiver nous faisons du ski.

In winter we go skiing.

- You often find the definite article in phrases that tell you about prices and rates.

6 euros le kilo

6 euros a kilo

3 euros la pièce

3 euros each

On roulait à 100 kilomètres à l'heure.

We were doing 100 kilometres an hour.

Key points

- ✓ The definite article is used in French with:
 - abstract nouns
 - concrete nouns (*when you are saying something that is true about a thing in general*)
 - parts of the body
 - countries, continents and regions
 - school subjects, languages and sports
 - dates
 - days of the week and the seasons (*when you are talking about something that you do regularly or that is a habit*)
 - prices and rates

The indefinite article: **un, une** and **des**

1 The basic rules

- In English we have the indefinite article *a*, which changes to *an* in front of a word that starts with a vowel. In the plural we say either *some*, *any* or nothing at all.
- In French, you choose from **un, une** and **des**, depending on whether the noun is masculine or feminine, and singular or plural.

	with masculine noun	with feminine noun
Singular	un	une
Plural	des	des

- **un** is used in front of masculine singular nouns.

un roi a king
un chien a dog
un jardin a garden

- **une** is used in front of feminine singular nouns.

une reine a queen
une souris a mouse
une porte a door

- **des** is used in front of plural nouns, whether they are masculine or feminine, and whatever letter they start with.

des chiens (some/any) dogs
des souris (some/any) mice
des amis (some/any) friends

- ❓ Note that **des** is also a combination of **de + les** and has other meanings, such as saying who something belongs to or where something is from.

- ➡ For more information on **des**, see page 166.

Tip

When **des** is used in front of a word that starts with a consonant (any letter except *a, e, i, o* or *u*), you DO NOT say the **s** on the end of **des**: **des chiens** (some/any) dogs.

When **des** is used in front of a word that starts with a vowel, and most words starting with **h**, you DO pronounce the **s** on the end. It sounds like the *z* in the English word *zip*: **des amis** (some/any) friends, **des hôtels** (some/any) hotels.

2 The indefinite article in negative sentences

- In English we use words like *not* and *never* to indicate that something is not happening or is not true. The sentences that these words are used in are called **negative sentences**.

I **don't** know him.

I **never** do my homework on time.

- In French, you use word pairs like **ne ... pas** (meaning *not*) and **ne ... jamais** (meaning *never*) to say that something is not happening or not true. When **un, une** or **des** is used after this type of expression, it has to be changed to **de**.

Je **n'ai pas de** vélo.

I don't have a bike.

Nous **n'avons pas de** cousins.

We don't have any cousins.

- ⇒ For more information on **Negatives**, see page 138.

Tip

de changes to **d'** in front of a word starting with a vowel and most words starting with **h**.

Je **n'ai pas d'ordinateur**.

I don't have a computer.

Il **n'y a pas d'horloge dans la salle**. There isn't a clock in the room.

Grammar Extra!

There are some very common adjectives, like **beau, bon** and **petit**, that can come **BEFORE** the noun instead of after it. When an adjective comes before a plural noun, **des** changes to **de**.

J'ai **reçu de beaux cadeaux**.

I got some lovely presents.

Cette région a **de très jolis villages**.

This area has some very pretty villages.

- ⇒ For more information on **Word order with adjectives**, see page 32.

3 The meaning of **des**

- **des** can mean different things in English, depending on the sentence. *Some* is often the best word to use.

J'ai **un chien, deux chats et des souris**.

I've got a dog, two cats and some mice.

Tu **veux des chips**?

Would you like some crisps?

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

- In questions and negative sentences **des** means *any*, or is not translated at all.

Tu **as des frères**?

Have you got any brothers?

Il **n'y a pas d'œufs**.

There aren't any eggs.

Avez-vous des timbres?

Do you have stamps?

Tip

As an English speaker, you will know what sounds right in your own language. The important thing to remember is that **des** can **NEVER** be missed out in French, even if there is no word in English.

4 Using the indefinite article

- The indefinite article is used in French in much the same way as we use *a, some* and *any* in English, but there are two places where the indefinite article is **NOT** used:

- with the adjective **quel** (meaning *what a*), in sentences like
Quel dommage! What a shame!
Quelle surprise! What a surprise!
Quelle bonne idée! What a good idea!

- ⇒ For more information on **quel**, see page 148.

- when you say what jobs people do
Il est professeur. He's a teacher.
Ma mère est infirmière. My mother's a nurse.

Tip

When you use **c'est** (to mean *he/she is*), you **DO** use **un** or **une**.
 When you use **ce sont** (to mean *they are*), you **DO** use **des**.

C'est un médecin.

He's/She's a doctor.

Ce sont des acteurs.

They're actors.

- ⇒ For more information on **c'est** and **ce sont**, see page 65.

Key points

- ✓ With masculine singular nouns → use **un**.
- ✓ With feminine singular nouns → use **une**.
- ✓ With plural nouns → use **des**.
- ✓ **un, une** and **des** → change to **de** or **d'** in negative sentences.
- ✓ The indefinite article is not usually used when you say what jobs people do, or in exclamations with **quel**.

The partitive article: **du, de la, de l'** and **des**

1 The basic rules

- **du, de la, de l'** and **des** can all be used to give information about the amount or quantity of a particular thing. They are often translated into English as *some* or *any*.
- In French, you choose between **du, de la, de l'** and **des**, depending on whether the noun is masculine or feminine, singular or plural.

	with masculine noun	with feminine noun
Singular	du (de l')	de la (de l')
Plural	des	des

Tip

de + le and **de la** change to **de l'** when they are used in front of a word starting with a vowel, most words starting with **h**, and the French word **y**.

- **du** is used in front of masculine singular nouns.

du beurre (some/any) butter
du jus d'orange (some/any) orange juice

- ❗ Note that **du** is also a combination of **de + le** and has other meanings, such as saying who something belongs to or where something is from.

➡ For more information on **du**, see page 166.

- **de la** is used in front of feminine singular nouns.

de la viande (some/any) meat
de la margarine (some/any) margarine

- **de l'** is used in front of singular nouns that start with a vowel and most nouns starting with **h**, whether they are masculine or feminine.

de l'argent (masculine) (some/any) money
de l'eau (feminine) (some/any) water
de l'herbe (feminine) (some/any) grass

- **des** is used in front of plural nouns, whether they are masculine or feminine and whatever letter they start with.

des gâteaux (some/any) cakes
des lettres (some/any) letters
des hôtels (some/any) hotels

- ❗ Note that **des** is also a combination of **de + les** and has other meanings, such as saying who something belongs to or where something is from.

➡ For more information on **des**, see page 166.

2 The partitive article in negative sentences

- In French, you use word pairs like **ne ... pas** (meaning *not*) and **ne ... jamais** (meaning *never*) to say that something is not happening or not true. In this type of expression, **du, de la, de l'** and **des** all change to **de**.

Nous n'avons pas de beurre. We don't have any butter.
Je ne mange jamais de viande. I never eat meat.
Il n'y a pas de timbres. There aren't any stamps.

➡ For more information on **Negatives**, see page 138.

Tip

de changes to **d'** in front of a word starting with a vowel and most nouns starting with **h**.

Il n'a pas d'argent. He doesn't have any money.
Il n'y a pas d'horloge dans la salle. There isn't a clock in the room.

Grammar Extra!

There are some very common adjectives, like **beau, bon** and **petit**, that can come **BEFORE** the noun instead of after it. When an adjective comes before a plural noun, **des** changes to **de**.

J'ai reçu de beaux cadeaux. I got some lovely presents.
Cette région a de très jolis villages. This area has some very pretty villages.

➡ For more information on **Word order with adjectives**, see page 32.

3 The meaning of **du**, **de la**, **de l'** and **des**

- **du**, **de la**, **de l'** and **des** are often translated into English as *some* or *any*, but there are times when no word is used in English to translate the French.

Il me doit de l'argent.

He owes me (some) money.

Je vais acheter de la farine et du beurre pour faire un gâteau.

I'm going to buy (some) flour and butter to make a cake.

Est-ce qu'il y a des lettres pour moi?

Are there any letters for me?

Elle ne veut pas de beurre.

She doesn't want any butter.

Je ne prends pas de lait.

I don't take milk.

Tip

Remember that **du**, **de la**, **de l'** and **des** can **NEVER** be missed out in French, even if there is no word in English.

Key points

- ✓ With masculine singular nouns → use **du**.
- ✓ With feminine singular nouns → use **de la**.
- ✓ With singular nouns starting with a vowel and some nouns beginning with **h** → use **de l'**.
- ✓ With plural nouns → use **des**.
- ✓ **du**, **de la**, **de l'** and **des** → change to **de** or **d'** in negative sentences.

ADJECTIVES

What is an adjective?

An **adjective** is a 'describing' word that tells you more about a person or thing, such as their appearance, colour, size or other qualities, for example, *pretty*, *blue*, *big*.

Using adjectives

- Adjectives are words like *clever*, *expensive* and *silly* that tell you more about a noun (a living being, thing or idea). They can also tell you more about a pronoun, such as *he* or *they*. Adjectives are sometimes called 'describing words'. They can be used right next to a noun they are describing, or can be separated from the noun by a verb like *be*, *look*, *feel* and so on.

a clever girl

an expensive coat

a silly idea

He's just being silly.

- ➡ For more information on **Nouns** and **Pronouns**, see pages 1 and 42.

- In English, the only time an adjective changes its form is when you are making a comparison.

She's cleverer than her brother.

That's the silliest idea I ever heard!

- In French, however, most adjectives agree with what they are describing. This means that their endings change depending on whether the person or thing you are referring to is masculine or feminine, and singular or plural.

un mot français

a French word

une chanson française

a French song

des traditions françaises

French traditions

- In English we put adjectives BEFORE the noun they describe, but in French you usually put them AFTER it.

un chat noir

a **black** cat

- ⇒ For further information, see **Word order with adjectives** on page 32.

Key points

- ✓ Most French adjectives change their form, according to whether the person or thing they are describing is masculine or feminine, singular or plural.
- ✓ In French adjectives usually go after the noun they describe.

Making adjectives agree

1 The basic rules

- In dictionaries, regular French adjectives are usually shown in the masculine singular form. You need to know how to change them to make them agree with the noun or pronoun that they are describing.
- To make an adjective agree with the noun or pronoun it describes, you simply add the following endings in most cases:

	with masculine noun	with feminine noun
Singular	-	-e
Plural	-s	-es

un chat noir a black cat
une chemise noire a black shirt
des chats noirs black cats
des chemises noires black shirts

2 Making adjectives feminine

- With most adjectives you add an **-e** to the masculine singular form to make it feminine.

un chat noir a black cat → **une chemise noire** a black shirt
un sac lourd a heavy bag → **une valise lourde** a heavy suitcase

- If the adjective already ends in an **-e** in the masculine, you do not add another **-e**.

un sac jaune a yellow bag → **une chemise jaune** a yellow shirt
un garçon sage a good boy → **une fille sage** a good girl

- Some changes to endings are a little more complicated but still follow a regular pattern. Sometimes you have to double the consonant as well as adding an **-e**. On the next page there is a table showing these changes.

Masculine ending	Feminine ending	Example	Meaning
-f	-ve	neuf/neuve	new
-x	-se	heureux/heureuse	happy
-er	-ère	cher/chère	dear, expensive
-an	-anne	paysan/paysanne	farming, country
-en	-enne	européen/européenne	European
-on	-onne	bon/bonne	good, right
-el	-elle	cruel/cruelle	cruel
-eil	-eille	pareil/pareille	similar
-et	-ette	net/nette	clear
	-ète	complet/complète	complete, full

un **bon** repas a good meal → de **bonne** humeur in a good mood
 un homme **cruel** a cruel man → une remarque **cruelle** a cruel remark

Tip

If a masculine adjective ends in a vowel (a, e, i, o or u), its pronunciation does not change when an -e is added to form the feminine. For example, **joli** and **jolie** are both pronounced the same.

If a masculine adjective ends with a consonant that is not pronounced, such as -d, -s or -t, you **DO** pronounce that consonant when an -e is added in the feminine. For example, in **chaud** (meaning *hot, warm*), you cannot hear the **d** when it is said out loud; in the feminine form **chaude**, you can hear the **d** sound.

This is also true when you have to double the consonant before the -e is added, for example, **gros** (meaning *big, fat*), where you cannot hear the **s**, and the feminine form **grosse**, where you can hear the **s** sound.

Some masculine adjectives, such as **bon** (meaning *good*) or **italien** (meaning *Italian*), end in what is called a nasal vowel and an -n. With these words, you pronounce the vowel 'through your nose' but do not say the **n**. When the consonant is doubled and an -e is added in the feminine – **bonne, italienne** – the vowel becomes a normal one instead of a nasal vowel and you do pronounce the **n**.

► Some very common adjectives have irregular feminine forms.

Masculine form	Feminine form	Meaning
blanc	blanche	white, blank
doux	douce	soft, sweet, mild, gentle
faux	fausse	untrue
favori	favorite	favourite
frais	fraîche	fresh, chilly, cool
gentil	gentille	nice, kind
grec	grecque	Greek
gros	grosse	big, fat
long	longue	long
nul	nulle	useless
roux	rousse	red, red-haired
sec	sèche	dry, dried
turc	turque	Turkish

mon sport favori my favourite sport → **ma chanson favorite** my favourite song

un ami grec a Greek (male) friend → **une amie grecque** a Greek (female) friend

► A very small group of French adjectives have an extra masculine singular form that is used in front of words that begin with a vowel (a, e, i, o or u) and most words beginning with **h**. These adjectives also have an irregular feminine form.

Masculine form in front of a word beginning with a consonant	Masculine form in front of a word beginning with a vowel or most words beginning with h	Feminine form	Meaning
beau	bel	belle	lovely, beautiful, good-looking, handsome
fou	fol	folle	mad
nouveau	nouvel	nouvelle	new
vieux	vieil	vieille	old

un bel appartement a beautiful flat

le Nouvel An New Year

un vieil arbre an old tree

3 Making adjectives plural

- With most adjectives you add an **-s** to the masculine singular or feminine singular form to make it plural.

un chat noir a black cat → **des chats noirs** black cats

une valise lourde a heavy suitcase → **des valises lourdes** heavy suitcases

Tip

When an adjective describes a masculine **and** a feminine noun or pronoun, use the masculine plural form of the adjective.

La maison et le jardin sont beaux. The house and garden are beautiful.

Sophie et son petit ami sont très gentils. Sophie and her boyfriend are very nice.

- If the masculine singular form already ends in an **-s** or an **-x**, you do not add an **-s**.

un fromage français a French cheese → **des fromages français** French cheeses

un homme dangereux a dangerous man → **des hommes dangereux** dangerous men

- If the masculine singular form ends in **-eau** or **-al**, the masculine plural is usually **-eaux** or **-aux**.

le nouveau professeur the new teacher → **les nouveaux professeurs** the new teachers

le rôle principal the main role → **les rôles principaux** the main roles

Tip

Adding an **-s** or an **-x** does not change the pronunciation of a word. For example, **noir** and **noirs** sound just the same, as do **nouveau** and **nouveaux**.

When the **-s** or **-x** ending comes before a word starting with a vowel or most words starting with **h**, you have to pronounce the **s** or **x** on the end of the adjective. It sounds like the **z** in the English word **zip**.

les anciens élèves the former pupils

de grands hôtels big hotels

4 Invariable adjectives

- A small number of adjectives (mostly relating to colours) do not change in the feminine or plural. They are called **invariable** because their form **NEVER** changes, no matter what they are describing. These adjectives are often made up of more than one word – for example, **bleu marine** (meaning *navy blue*), or else come from the names of fruit or nuts – for example, **orange** (meaning *orange*), **marron** (meaning *brown*).

des chaussures marron brown shoes

une veste bleu marine a navy blue jacket

Key points

- ✓ To make an adjective agree with a feminine singular noun or pronoun, you usually add **-e** to the masculine singular. If the adjective already ends in an **-e**, no further **-e** is added.
- ✓ Several adjectives ending in a consonant double their consonant as well as adding **-e** in the feminine.
- ✓ **beau, fou, nouveau** and **vieux** have an irregular feminine form and an extra masculine singular form that is used in front of words that begin with a vowel and most words beginning with **h**: **bel, fol, nouvel, vieil**.
- ✓ To make an adjective agree with a masculine plural noun or pronoun, you usually add **-s** to the masculine singular. If the adjective already ends in an **-s** or an **-x**, no further **-s** is added.
- ✓ If the adjective ends in **-eau** or **-al**, the masculine plural is usually **-eaux** or **-aux**.
- ✓ To make an adjective agree with a feminine plural noun or pronoun, you usually add **-es** to the masculine singular.
- ✓ Some adjectives relating to colours never change their form.

Word order with adjectives

1 The basic rules

- When adjectives are used right beside the noun they are describing, they go **BEFORE** it in English. French adjectives usually go **AFTER** the noun.

l'heure exacte the right time

la page suivante the following page

- Adjectives describing colours, shapes or nationalities always go **AFTER** the noun.

des cravates rouges red ties

une table ronde a round table

un mot français a French word

- Some very common adjectives usually come **BEFORE** the noun.

beau lovely, beautiful, good-looking, handsome

bon good, right

court short

grand tall, big, long, great

gros big, fat

haut high

jeune young

joli pretty

long long

mauvais bad, poor

meilleur better

nouveau new

petit small, little

premier first

vieux old

une belle journée a lovely day

Bonne chance! Good luck!

- There is a small group of common adjectives whose meaning changes depending on whether they come before the noun or go after it.

Adjective	Example before noun	Meaning	Example after noun	Meaning
ancien	un ancien collègue	a <u>former</u> colleague	un fauteuil ancien	an <u>antique</u> chair
cher	Chère Julie	<u>Dear</u> Julie	une robe chère	an <u>expensive</u> dress
propre	ma propre chambre	my <u>own</u> bedroom	un mouchoir propre	a <u>clean</u> handkerchief

Tip

dernier (meaning *last*) and **prochain** (meaning *next*) go **AFTER** nouns relating to time, for example, **semaine** (meaning *week*) and **mois** (meaning *month*). Otherwise they go **BEFORE** the noun.

la semaine dernière last week

la dernière fois que je t'ai vu the last time I saw you

la semaine prochaine next week

la prochaine fois que j'y vais the next time I go there

Grammar Extra!

When certain adjectives are used with certain nouns, they take on a meaning you cannot always guess. You may need to check these in your dictionary and learn them. Here are a few:

mon petit ami my boyfriend

les petits pois peas

les grandes vacances the summer holidays

une grande personne an adult, a grown-up

2 Using more than one adjective

- In French you can use more than one adjective at a time to describe someone or something. If one of the adjectives usually comes **BEFORE** the noun and the other usually goes **AFTER** the noun, the word order follows the usual pattern.

une jeune femme blonde a young blonde woman

un nouveau film intéressant an interesting new film

- If both adjectives usually come **AFTER** the noun, they are joined together with **et** (meaning *and*).

un homme mince et laid a thin, ugly man

une personne intelligente et drôle an intelligent, funny person

Key points

- ✓ Most French adjectives go after the noun they describe.
- ✓ Some very common adjectives usually come before the noun: **bon/mauvais, court/long, grand/petit, jeune/nouveau/vieux, gros, haut, beau, joli, premier, meilleur.**
- ✓ The meaning of some adjectives such as **ancien, cher** and **propre** varies according to the position in the sentence.

Comparatives and superlatives of adjectives

1 Making comparisons using comparative adjectives

What is a comparative adjective?

A **comparative adjective** in English is one with *-er* on the end of it or *more* or *less* in front of it, that is used to compare people or things, for example, *slower*, *less important*, *more beautiful*.

- In French, to say that something is *easier*, *more expensive* and so on, you use **plus** (meaning *more*) before the adjective.

Cette question est plus facile. This question is easier.

Cette veste est plus chère. This jacket is more expensive.

- To say something is *less expensive*, *less complicated* and so on, you use **moins** (meaning *less*) before the adjective.

Cette veste est moins chère. This jacket is less expensive.

un projet moins compliqué a less complicated plan

- To introduce the person or thing you are making the comparison with, use **que** (meaning *than*).

Elle est plus petite que moi. She's smaller than me.

Cette question est plus facile que la première. This question is easier than the first one.

- To say that something or someone is *as ... as* something or someone else, use **aussi ... que**.

Il est aussi inquiet que moi. He's as worried as me.

Cette ville n'est pas aussi grande que Bordeaux. This town isn't as big as Bordeaux.

2 Making comparisons using superlative adjectives

What is a superlative adjective?

A **superlative adjective** in English is one with *-est* on the end of it or *most* or *least* in front of it, that is used to compare people or things, for example, *thinnest*, *most beautiful*, *least interesting*.

- In French, to say that something or someone is *easiest*, *prettiest*, *most expensive* and so on, you use:

- **le plus** with masculine singular adjectives

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

- **la plus** with feminine singular adjectives
- **les plus** with plural adjectives (for both masculine and feminine)

le guide le plus utile	the <u>most</u> useful guidebook
la question la plus facile	the <u>easiest</u> question
les plus grands hôtels	the <u>biggest</u> hotels
les plus petites voitures	the <u>smallest</u> cars

- To say that something or someone is *the least easy*, *the least pretty*, *the least expensive* and so on, you use:

- **le moins** with masculine singular adjectives
- **la moins** with feminine singular adjectives
- **les moins** with plural adjectives (for both masculine and feminine).

le guide le moins utile	the <u>least</u> useful guidebook
Cette question est la moins facile.	This question is the <u>least</u> easy (or the <u>hardest</u>).
les mois les moins agréables	the <u>least</u> pleasant months
les moins belles photos	the <u>least</u> attractive photos

Tip

When the adjective comes **AFTER** the noun, you repeat the definite article (**le**, **la** or **les**).

les mois les moins agréables the least pleasant months

When the adjective comes **BEFORE** the noun, you do not repeat the definite article.

les moins belles photos the least attractive photos

➡ For more information on **Word order with adjectives**, see page 32.

- In phrases like *the biggest hotel in London* and *the oldest person in the village*, you use **de** to translate *in*.

le plus grand hôtel de Londres the biggest hotel in London

la personne la plus âgée du village the oldest person in the village

➡ For more information on **de** and **du**, see page 166.

3 Irregular comparative and superlative adjectives

- Just as English has some irregular comparative and superlative forms – *better* instead of *'more good'*, and *worst* instead of *'most bad'* – French also has a few irregular forms.

Adjective	Meaning	Comparative	Meaning	Superlative	Meaning
bon	good	meilleur	better	le meilleur	the best
mauvais	bad	pire plus mauvais	worse	le pire le plus mauvais	the worst
petit	small	moindre plus petit	smaller, lesser	le moindre le plus petit	the smallest, the least, the slightest

J'ai une meilleure idée.

I've got a better idea.

Il ne fait pas le moindre effort.

He doesn't make the slightest effort.

Tip

Choose the right form of the adjective to match the noun or pronoun, depending on whether it is masculine or feminine, singular or plural. Don't forget to change **le** to **la** or **les** too in superlatives.

Grammar Extra!

bien and its comparative and superlative forms **mieux** and **le mieux** can be both adjectives and adverbs.

Il est bien, ce restaurant. (=adjective) This restaurant is good.

Elle va mieux aujourd'hui. (=adverb) She's better today.

➔ For more information on **Adverbs**, see page 152.

Key points

- ✓ To compare people or things in French you use **plus** + adjective, **moins** + adjective or **aussi ... que**.
- ✓ *than* in comparatives corresponds to **que**.
- ✓ French superlatives are formed with **le/la/les plus** + adjective and **le/la/les moins** + adjective.
- ✓ *in* after superlatives corresponds to **de**.
- ✓ **bon, mauvais** and **petit** have irregular comparatives and superlatives: **bon/meilleur/le meilleur, mauvais/pire/le pire, petit/moindre/le moindre**.

Demonstrative adjectives **ce, cette, cet** and **ces**

What is a demonstrative adjective?

A **demonstrative adjective** is one of the words *this, that, these* and *those* used with a noun in English to point out a particular thing or person, for example, this woman, that dog.

- In French you use **ce** to point out a particular thing or person. Like all adjectives in French, **ce** changes its form depending on whether you are referring to a noun that is masculine or feminine, singular or plural.

	Masculine	Feminine	Meaning
Singular	ce (cet)	cette	this that
Plural	ces	ces	these those

Tip

cet is used in front of masculine singular nouns which begin with a vowel and most words beginning with **h**.

cet oiseau

this/that bird

cet hôpital

this/that hospital

- **ce** comes BEFORE the noun it refers to.

Combien coûte ce manteau?

How much is this/that coat?

Comment s'appelle cette entreprise?

What's this/that company called?

Ces livres sont très intéressants.

These/Those books are very interesting.

Ces couleurs sont jolies.

These/Those colours are pretty.

- If you want to emphasize the difference between something that is close to you and something that is further away, you can add:

- **-ci** on the end of the noun for things that are closer

Prends cette valise-ci.

Take this case.

- **-là** on the end of the noun for things that are further away

Est-ce que tu reconnais cette personne-là? Do you recognize that person?

Key points

- ✓ The adjective **ce** corresponds to *this* and *that* in the singular, and *these* and *those* in the plural.
- ✓ The forms are **ce** and **cette** in the singular, and **ces** in the plural. **cet** is used with masculine singular nouns beginning with a vowel and most words beginning with **h**.
- ✓ You can add **-ci** on the end of the noun for things that are closer, or **-là** for things that are further away, to emphasize the difference between them.

Possessive adjectives

What is a possessive adjective?

In English a **possessive adjective** is one of the words *my*, *your*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *our* or *their* used with a noun to show that one person or thing belongs to another.

- Here are the French possessive adjectives. Like all French adjectives, these agree with the noun they refer to.

with masculine singular noun	with feminine singular noun	with plural noun (masculine or feminine)	Meaning
mon	ma (mon)	mes	my
ton	ta (ton)	tes	your
son	sa (son)	ses	his her its one's
notre	notre	nos	our
votre	votre	vos	your
leur	leur	leurs	their

Tip

You use **mon**, **ton** and **son** with feminine singular nouns in front of words that begin with a vowel and most words beginning with **h**. This makes them easier to say.

mon assiette	my plate
ton histoire	your story
son erreur	his/her mistake
mon autre sœur	my other sister

- Possessive adjectives come **BEFORE** the noun they describe.

Voilà mon mari.	There's my husband.
Mon frère et ma sœur habitent à Glasgow.	My brother and sister live in Glasgow.
Est-ce que tes voisins vendent leur maison?	Are your neighbours selling their house?
Rangez vos affaires.	Put your things away.

Tip

Possessive adjectives agree with what they describe, **NOT** with the person who owns that thing. For example, **sa** can mean *his, her, its* and *one's*, but can only ever be used with a feminine singular noun.

Paul cherche sa montre.

Paul's looking for his watch.

Paul cherche ses lunettes.

Paul's looking for his glasses.

Catherine a appelé son frère.

Catherine called her brother.

Catherine a appelé sa sœur.

Catherine called her sister.

- The equivalent of *your* in French is **ton/ta/tes** for someone you call **tu**, or **votre/vos** for someone you call **vous**.

⇒ For more information on the difference between **tu** and **vous**, see page 43.

- ⓘ Note that possessive adjectives are **not** normally used with parts of the body. Use **le, la, l'** or **les** instead.

J'ai mal à la main.

My hand hurts.

⇒ For more information on **Articles**, see page 12.

Key points

- ✓ The French possessive adjectives are:
 - **mon/ton/son/notre/votre/leur** in the masculine singular
 - **ma/ta/sa/notre/votre/leur** in the feminine singular
 - **mes/tes/ses/nos/vos/leurs** in the plural
- ✓ Possessive adjectives come before the noun they refer to. They agree with what they describe, rather than with the person who owns that thing.
- ✓ You use **mon, ton** and **son** with feminine singular nouns when the following word begins with a vowel. You also use them with most words beginning with **h**.
- ✓ Possessive adjectives are not normally used with parts of the body. Use **le, la, l'** or **les** instead.

Indefinite adjectives

What is an indefinite adjective?

An **indefinite adjective** is one of a small group of adjectives that are used to talk about people or things in a general way without saying exactly who or what they are, for example, *several, all, every*.

- In French, this type of adjective comes **BEFORE** the noun it refers to. Here are the most common French indefinite adjectives:

Masculine singular	Feminine singular	Masculine plural	Feminine plural	Meaning
autre	autre	autres	autres	other
chaque	chaque	-	-	every, each
même	même	mêmes	mêmes	same
-	-	quelques	quelques	some, a few
tout	toute	tous	toutes	all, every

J'ai d'autres projets.

I've got other plans.

J'y vais chaque année.

I go every year.

J'ai le même manteau.

I have the same coat.

Il a quelques amis à Paris.

He has some friends in Paris.

Il reste quelques bouteilles.

There are a few bottles left.

Il travaille tout le temps.

He works all the time.

Tip

You can also use **tout** to talk about how often something happens.

tous les jours

every day

tous les deux jours

every other day

- ⓘ Note that these words can also be used as **pronouns**, standing in place of a noun instead of being used with one. **chaque** and **quelques** have a slightly different form when they are used in this way.

⇒ For more information on **Pronouns**, see page 42.

Key points

- ✓ The most common French indefinite adjectives are **autre, chaque, même, quelques** and **tout**.
- ✓ They come before the noun when they are used in this way.

PRONOUNS

What is a pronoun?

A **pronoun** is a word you use instead of a noun, when you do not need, or want to name someone or something directly, for example, *it, you, none*.

➤ There are several different types of pronoun:

- **Personal pronouns** such as *I, you, he, her* and *they*, which are used to refer to yourself, the person you are talking to, or other people and things. They can be either **subject pronouns** (*I, you, he* and so on) or **object pronouns** (*him, her, them* and so on).
- **Possessive pronouns** like *mine* and *yours*, which show who someone or something belongs to.
- **Indefinite pronouns** like *someone* or *nothing*, which refer to people or things in a general way without saying exactly who or what they are.
- **Relative pronouns** like *who, which* or *that*, which link two parts of a sentence together.
- **Demonstrative pronouns** like *this* or *those*, which point things or people out.
- **Reflexive pronouns**, a type of object pronoun that forms part of French reflexive verbs like **se laver** (meaning *to wash*) or **s'appeler** (meaning *to be called*).

➡ For more information on **Reflexive verbs**, see page 88.

- The two French pronouns, **en** and **y**, which are used in certain constructions.
- The pronouns **qui?** (meaning *who?*, *whom?*), **que?** (meaning *what?*), **quoi?** (meaning *what?*) and **lequel?** (meaning *which one?*), which are used in asking questions.

➡ For more information on **Questions**, see page 142.

➤ Pronouns often stand in for a noun to save repeating it.

I finished my homework and gave it to my teacher.

Do you remember Jack? I saw him at the weekend.

➤ Word order with personal pronouns is usually different in French and English.

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

Personal pronouns: subject

What is a subject pronoun?

A **subject pronoun** is a word such as *I, he, she* and *they*, which performs the action expressed by the verb. Pronouns stand in for nouns when it is clear who is being talked about, for example, *My brother isn't here at the moment. He'll be back in an hour.*

1 Using subject pronouns

➤ Here are the French subject pronouns:

Singular	Meaning	Plural	Meaning
je (j')	I	nous	we
tu	you	vous	you
il	he it	ils	they (masculine)
elle	she it	elles	they (feminine)
on	one (we/you/they)		

Je pars en vacances demain.

I'm going on holiday tomorrow.

Nous habitons à Nice.

We live in Nice.

Tip

je changes to **j'** in front of words beginning with a vowel, most words beginning with **h**, and the French word **y**.

J'arrive!

I'm just coming!

Bon, j'y vais.

Right, I'm off.

2 tu or vous?

➤ In English we have only one way of saying *you*. In French, there are two words: **tu** and **vous**. The word you use depends on:

- whether you are talking to one person or more than one person
- whether you are talking to a friend or family member, or someone else

➤ If you are talking to one person you know well, such as a friend, a young person or a relative, use **tu**.

Tu me prêtes ce CD? Will you lend me this CD?

- If you are talking to one person you do not know so well, such as your teacher, your boss or a stranger, use **vous**.

Vous pouvez entrer. You may come in.

Tip

If you are in doubt as to which form of *you* to use, it is safest to use **vous** and you will not offend anybody.

- If you are talking to more than one person, you have to use **vous**, no matter how well you know them.

Vous comprenez, les enfants? Do you understand, children?

- ❗ Note that the adjectives you use with **tu** and **vous** have to agree in the feminine and plural forms.

Vous êtes certain, Monsieur Leclerc? (masculine singular) Are you sure, Mr Leclerc?

Vous êtes certains, les enfants? (masculine plural) Are you sure, children?

Grammar Extra!

Any past participles (the form of the verb ending in **-é**, **-i** or **-u** in French) used with **être** in tenses such as the perfect also have to agree in the feminine and plural forms.

Vous êtes partie quand, Estelle? (feminine singular) When did you leave, Estelle?

Estelle et Sophie – vous êtes parties quand? (feminine plural) Estelle and Sophie – when did you leave?

⇒ For more information on the **Past participle**, see page 111.

3 il/elle and ils/elles

- In English we generally refer to things (such as *table*, *book*, *car*) only as *it*. In French, **il** (meaning *he*, *it*) and **elle** (meaning *she*, *it*) are used to talk about a thing, as well as about a person or an animal. You use **il** for masculine nouns and **elle** for feminine nouns.

Il est déjà parti. He's already left.

Elle est actrice. She's an actress.

Il mord, ton chien? Does your dog bite?

Prends cette chaise. Elle est plus confortable. Take this chair. It's more comfortable.

- **il** is also used to talk about the weather, the time and in certain other set phrases, often in the same way as some phrases with *it* in English.

Il pleut. It's raining.

Il est deux heures. It's two o'clock.

Il faut partir. We/You have to go.

- **ils** (meaning *they*) and **elles** (meaning *they*) are used in the plural to talk about things, as well as about people or animals. Use **ils** for masculine nouns and **elles** for feminine nouns.

Ils vont appeler ce soir. They're going to call tonight.

'Où sont Anne et Rachel?' – 'Elles sont à la piscine.' 'Where are Anne and Rachel?' – 'They're at the swimming pool.'

'Est-ce qu'il reste des billets?' – 'Non, ils sont tous vendus.' 'Are there any tickets left?' – 'No, they're all sold.'

'Tu aimes ces chaussures?' – 'Non, elles sont affreuses!' 'Do you like those shoes?' – 'No, they're horrible!'

- If you are talking about a masculine and a feminine noun, use **ils**.

Que font ton père et ta mère quand ils partent en vacances? What do your father and mother do when they go on holiday?

'Où sont le poivre et la moutarde?' – 'Ils sont déjà sur la table.' 'Where are the pepper and the mustard?' – 'They're already on the table.'

4 on

- **on** is frequently used in informal, everyday French to mean *we*.

On va à la plage demain. We're going to the beach tomorrow.

On y va? Shall we go?

- **on** can also have the sense of *someone* or *they*.

On m'a volé mon porte-monnaie. Someone has stolen my purse.

On vous demande au téléphone. There's a phone call for you.

Tip

on is often used to avoid a passive construction in French.

On m'a dit que tu étais malade. I was told you were ill.

⇒ For more information on the **Passive**, see page 122.

- You can also use **on** as we use *you* in English when we mean people in general.

On peut visiter le château en été.

You can visit the castle in the summer.

D'ici on peut voir les côtes françaises.

From here you can see the French coast.

Tip

The form of the verb you use with **on** is the same as the **il/elle** form.

➡ For more information on **Verbs**, see pages 69–137.

Key points

- ✓ The French subject pronouns are: **je (j')**, **tu**, **il**, **elle**, **on** in the singular, and **nous**, **vous**, **ils**, **elles** in the plural.
- ✓ To say *you* in French, use **tu** if you are talking to one person you know well or to a young person. Use **vous** if you are talking to one person you do not know so well or to more than one person.
- ✓ **il/ils** (masculine singular/plural) and **elle/elles** (feminine singular/plural) are used to refer to things, as well as to people or animals. **il** is also used in certain set phrases.
- ✓ If there is a mixture of masculine and feminine nouns, use **ils**.
- ✓ **on** can mean *we*, *someone*, *you*, *they*, or people in general. It is often used instead of a passive construction.

Personal pronouns: direct object

What is a direct object pronoun?

A **direct object pronoun** is a word such as *me*, *him*, *us* and *them*, which is used instead of the noun to stand in for the person or thing most directly affected by the action expressed by the verb.

1 Using direct object pronouns

- Direct object pronouns stand in for nouns when it is clear who or what is being talked about, and save having to repeat the noun.

I've lost my glasses. Have you seen **them**?

'Have you met Jo?' – 'Yes, I really like **her**!'

- Here are the French direct object pronouns:

Singular	Meaning	Plural	Meaning
me (m')	me	nous	us
te (t')	you	vous	you
le (l')	him it	les	them (masculine and feminine)
la (l')	her it		

Ils vont nous aider.

They're going to help us.

Je la vois.

I can see her/it.

'Tu aimes les carottes?' –

'Do you like carrots?' – 'No, I hate them!'

'Non, je les déteste!'

- ❗ Note that you cannot use direct object pronouns after a preposition like **à** or **de**, or when you want to emphasize something.

➡ For more information on **Emphatic pronouns**, see page 51.

Tip

me changes to **m'**, **te** to **t'**, and **le/la** to **l'** in front of words beginning with a vowel, most words beginning with **h**, and the French word **y**.

Je t'aime.

I love you.

Tu m'entends?

Can you hear me?

- In orders and instructions telling someone to do something, **moi** is used instead of **me**, and **toi** is used instead of **te**.

Aidez-moi!

Help me!

Assieds-toi.

Sit down.

- **le** is sometimes used to refer back to an idea or information that has already been given. The word *it* is often missed out in English.

'Ta chemise est très sale.' –

'Your shirt's very dirty.' –

'Je le sais.'

'I know.'

2 Word order with direct object pronouns

- The direct object pronoun usually comes **BEFORE** the verb.

Je t'aime.

I love you.

Les voyez-vous?

Can you see them?

Elle ne nous connaît pas.

She doesn't know us.

- ⓘ Note that in orders and instructions telling someone to do something, the direct object pronoun comes **AFTER** the verb.

Asseyez-vous.

Sit down.

- In tenses like the perfect that are formed with **avoir** or **être** and the past participle (the part of the verb that ends in **-é**, **-i** or **-u** in French), the direct object pronoun comes **BEFORE** the part of the verb that comes from **avoir** or **être**.

Il m'a vu.

He saw me.

- When a verb like **vouloir** (meaning *to want*) or **pouvoir** (meaning *to be able to, can*) is followed by another verb in the infinitive (the 'to' form of the verb), the direct object pronoun comes **BEFORE** the infinitive.

Il voudrait la revoir.

He'd like to see her again.

Puis-je vous aider?

Can I help you?

Key points

- ✓ The French direct object pronouns are: **me (m')**, **te (t')**, **le/la (l')** in the singular, and **nous**, **vous**, **les** in the plural.
- ✓ Except in orders and instructions telling someone to do something, the direct object pronoun comes before the verb.

Personal pronouns: indirect object

What is an indirect object pronoun?

When a verb has two objects (a **direct** one and an **indirect** one), the **indirect object pronoun** is used instead of a noun to show the person or thing the action is intended to benefit or harm, for example, *me* in *He gave me a book*; *Can you get me a towel*?

1 Using indirect object pronouns

- It is important to understand the difference between direct and indirect object pronouns in English, as they can have different forms in French:

- an **indirect object** answers the question *who to/for?* or *to/for what?*

He gave me a book. → *Who did he give the book to?* → **me** (=indirect object pronoun)

Can you get me a towel? → *Who can you get a towel for?* → **me** (=indirect object pronoun)

- if something answers the question *what* or *who*, then it is the **direct object** and **NOT** the indirect object

He gave me a book. → *What did he give me?* → a book (=direct object)

Can you get me a towel? → *What can you get me?* → a towel (=direct object)

- Here are the French indirect object pronouns:

Singular	Meaning	Plural	Meaning
me (m')	me, to me, for me	nous	us, to us, for us
te (t')	you, to you, for you	vous	you, to you, for you
lui	him, to him, for him it, to it, for it	leur	them, to them, for them (masculine and feminine)
lui	her, to her, for her it, to it, for it		

Il nous écrit tous les jours.

He writes to us every day.

Ils te cachent quelque chose.

They're hiding something from you.

Tip

me changes to **m'** and **te** to **t'** in front of words beginning with a vowel, most words beginning with **h**, and the French word **y**.

Il **m'a** donné un livre.

He gave me a book.

Tu **m'apportes** une serviette?

Can you get me a towel?

- The pronouns shown in the table are used instead of the preposition **à** with a noun.

J'**écris à Suzanne**. I'm writing to Suzanne. → **Je lui écris**. I'm writing to her.

Donne du lait au chat. Give the cat some milk. → **Donne-lui du lait**. Give it some milk.

- Some French verbs like **demandeur à** (meaning *to ask*) and **téléphoner à** (meaning *to phone*) take an indirect object even though English uses a direct object.

Il **leur** téléphone tous les soirs. He phones them every evening.

- On the other hand, some French verbs like **attendre** (meaning *to wait for*), **chercher** (meaning *to look for*) and **regarder** (meaning *to look at*) take a direct object even though English uses an indirect object.

Je **les** attends devant la gare. I'll wait for them outside the station.

2 Word order with indirect object pronouns

- The indirect object pronoun usually comes **BEFORE** the verb.

Dominique **vous** écrit une lettre. Dominique's writing you a letter.

Il **ne nous** parle pas. He doesn't speak to us.

Il **ne veut pas me** répondre. He won't answer me.

- ⚠ Note that in orders and instructions telling someone to do something, the indirect object pronoun comes **AFTER** the verb.

Donne-moi ça! Give me that!

Key points

- ✓ The French indirect object pronouns are: **me (m')**, **te (t')**, **lui** in the singular, and **nous**, **vous**, **leur** in the plural.
- ✓ Except in orders and instructions telling someone to do something, the direct object pronoun comes before the verb.

Emphatic pronouns

What is an emphatic pronoun?

An **emphatic pronoun** is used instead of a noun when you want to emphasize something, for example *Is this for me?*

1 Using emphatic pronouns

- In French, there is another set of pronouns which you use after prepositions, when you want to emphasize something and in certain other cases. These are called emphatic pronouns or stressed pronouns.

Singular	Meaning	Plural	Meaning
moi	I me	nous	we us
toi	you	vous	you
lui	he him	eux	they (masculine) them
elle	she her	elles	they (feminine) them
soi	oneself (yourself, ourselves)		

Je pense souvent **à toi**.

I often think about you.

C'est pour moi?

Is this for me?

Venez avec moi.

Come with me.

Il a besoin **de nous**.

He needs us.

- **soi** (meaning *oneself*) is used with the subject pronoun **on** and with words like **tout le monde** (meaning *everyone*) or **chacun** (meaning *each one*).

Il faut avoir confiance **en soi**.

You have to have confidence in yourself.

Tout le monde est rentré chez soi.

Everyone went home.

2 When to use emphatic pronouns

- Emphatic pronouns are used in the following circumstances:

- after a preposition

C'est pour moi?

Is this for me?

- for emphasis, especially where a contrast is involved

Toi, tu ressembles à ton père, mais elle non.

You look like your father, she doesn't.

Il m'énervé, lui!

He's getting on my nerves!

- on their own without a verb

'Qui a cassé la fenêtre?' – 'Lui.'

'Who broke the window?' – 'He did.'

'Je suis fatiguée.' – 'Moi aussi.'

'I'm tired.' – 'Me too.'

- after **c'est** and **ce sont** (meaning *it is*)

C'est toi, Simon?

Is that you, Simon?

Ce sont eux.

It's them.

⇒ For more information on **c'est** and **ce sont**, see page 65.

- in comparisons

Tu es plus jeune que moi.

You're younger than me.

Il est moins grand que toi.

He's smaller than you (are).

- when the subject of the sentence is made up of two pronouns, or of a pronoun and a noun

Mon père et elle ne s'entendent pas.

My father and she don't get on.

Grammar Extra!

You can add **-même** or **-mêmes** to the emphatic pronouns when you particularly want to emphasize something. These forms correspond to English *myself*, *ourselves* and so on.

Form with -même	Meaning
moi-même	myself
toi-même	yourself
lui-même	himself, itself
elle-même	herself, itself
soi-même	oneself (yourself, ourselves)
nous-mêmes	ourselves
vous-même	yourself
vous-mêmes	yourselves
eux-mêmes	themselves (<i>masculine</i>)
elles-mêmes	themselves (<i>feminine</i>)

Je l'ai fait moi-même.

I did it myself.

Elle l'a choisi elle-même.

She chose it herself.

Key points

- ✓ The French emphatic pronouns are: **moi**, **toi**, **lui**, **elle**, **soi** in the singular, and **nous**, **vous**, **eux**, **elles** in the plural.
- ✓ They are used:
 - after a preposition
 - for emphasis
 - on their own without a verb
 - after **c'est** and **ce sont**
 - in comparisons
 - when the subject of the sentence is made up of two pronouns, or of a pronoun and a noun
- ✓ You can add **-même** or **-mêmes** to the emphatic pronouns when you particularly want to emphasize something.

Possessive pronouns

What is a possessive pronoun?

A **possessive pronoun** is one of the words *mine*, *yours*, *hers*, *his*, *ours* or *theirs*, which are used instead of a noun to show that one person or thing belongs to another, for example, Ask Carole if this pen is *hers*.

➤ Here are the French possessive pronouns:

Masculine singular	Feminine singular	Masculine plural	Feminine plural	Meaning
le mien	la mienne	les miens	les miennes	mine
le tien	la tienne	les tiens	les tiennes	yours
le sien	la sienne	les siens	les siennes	his hers
le nôtre	la nôtre	les nôtres	les nôtres	ours
le vôtre	la vôtre	les vôtres	les vôtres	yours
le leur	la leur	les leurs	les leurs	theirs

Ces CD-là, ce sont **les miens**.
Heureusement que tu as **tes**
clés. J'ai oublié **les miennes**.

Those CDs are mine.
It's lucky you've got your keys.
I forgot mine.

Tip

In French, possessive pronouns agree with what they describe, **NOT** with the person who owns that thing. For example, **le sien** can mean *his* or *hers*, but can only be used to replace a masculine singular noun.

'C'est **le vélo de Paul?** –

'Is that Paul's bike?' –

'Oui, c'est **le sien**.'

'Yes, it's his.'

'C'est **le vélo d'Isabelle?** –

'Is that Isabelle's bike?' –

'Oui, c'est **le sien**.'

'Yes, it's hers.'

Grammar Extra!

Remember that **à** with the definite article **le** becomes **au**, and **à** with **les** becomes **aux**, so:

à + le mien → au mien

à + les miens → aux miens

à + les miennes → aux miennes

Tu préfères ce manteau au mien?

Do you prefer this coat to mine?

Remember that **de** with the definite article **le** becomes **du**, and **de** with **les** becomes **des**, so:

de + le mien → du mien

de + les miens → des miens

de + les miennes → des miennes

**J'ai oublié mes clés. J'ai besoin
des tiennes.**

I've forgotten my keys. I need
yours.

➡ For more information on **Articles**, see page 12.

Key points

- ✓ The French possessive pronouns are **le mien**, **le tien**, **le sien** for singular subject pronouns, and **le nôtre**, **le vôtre** and **le leur** for plural subject pronouns. Their forms change in the feminine and the plural.
- ✓ In French, the pronoun you choose has to agree with the noun it replaces, and **not** with the person who owns that thing.

en and y

- **en** and **y** do not usually refer to people. How we translate them into English depends on where **en** and **y** are found in French.

1 en

- **en** is used with verbs and phrases normally followed by **de** to avoid repeating the same word.

Si tu as un problème, tu peux m'en parler.

If you've got a problem, you can talk to me about it. (**en** replaces **de** in **parler de quelque chose**)

Est-ce que tu peux me prêter ce livre? J'en ai besoin.

Can you lend me that book? I need it. (**en** replaces **de** in **avoir besoin de quelque chose**)

Il a un beau jardin et il en est très fier.

He's got a beautiful garden and is very proud of it. (**en** replaces **de** in **être fier de quelque chose**)

- **en** can also replace the partitive article (**du, de la, de l', des**).

Je n'ai pas d'argent. Tu en as?

I haven't got any money. Have you got any?

'Tu peux me prêter des timbres?' – 'Non, je dois en acheter.'

'Can you lend me some stamps?' – 'No, I have to buy some.'

⇒ For more information on the Partitive article, see page 22.

- **en** is also used:

- as a preposition
- with the present participle of verbs

⇒ For more information on Prepositions and the Present participle, see pages 162 and 125.

- When **en** is used with **avoir**, with **il y a** or with numbers, it is often not translated in English but can NEVER be missed out in French.

'Est-ce que tu as un dictionnaire?' – 'Oui, j'en ai un.'

'Have you got a dictionary?' – 'Yes, I've got one.'

'Combien d'élèves y a-t-il dans ta classe?' – 'Il y en a trente.'

'How many pupils are there in your class?' – 'There are thirty.'

J'en veux deux.

I want two (of them).

2 y

- **y** is used with verbs and phrases normally followed by **à** to avoid repeating the same word.

'Je pensais à l'examen.' – 'Mais arrête d'y penser!'

'I was thinking about the exam.' – 'Well, stop thinking about it!' (**y** replaces **à** in **penser à quelque chose**)

'Je ne m'attendais pas à ça.' – 'Moi, je m'y attendais.'

'I wasn't expecting that.' – 'Well, I was expecting it.' (**y** replaces **à** in **s'attendre à quelque chose**)

- **y** can also mean *there*. It can be used to replace phrases that would use prepositions such as **dans** (meaning *in*) and **sur** (meaning *on*).

Elle y passe tout l'été.

She spends the whole summer there.

Regarde dans le tiroir. Je pense que les clés y sont.

Look in the drawer. I think the keys are in there.

3 Word order with en and y

- **en** and **y** usually come BEFORE the verb.

J'en veux.

I want some.

Elle en a parlé avec moi.

She talked to me about it.

En êtes-vous content?

Are you pleased with it/them?

Comment fait-on pour y aller?

How do you get there?

N'y pense plus.

Don't think about it any more.

- In orders and instructions telling someone to do something, **en** or **y** come AFTER the verb and are attached to it with a hyphen (-).

Prenez-en.

Take some.

Restez-y.

Stay there.

Tip

The final **-s** of **-er** verbs is usually dropped in the **tu** form used for orders and instructions. When an **-er** verb in the **tu** form is used before **en** or **y**, however, the **-s** is not dropped, to make it easier to say.

Donne des bonbons à ton frère. Give some sweets to your brother.

Donnes-en à ton frère. Give some to your brother.

Va dans ta chambre! Go to your room!

Vas-y! Go on!

⇒ For more information on the Imperative, see page 85.

► **en** and **y** come AFTER other direct or indirect object pronouns.

Donnez-leur-en.

Give them some.

Il m'en a parlé.

He spoke to me about it.

➡ For more information on *Direct object pronouns* and *Indirect object pronouns*, see pages 47 and 49.

Key points

- ✓ **en** is used with verbs and expressions normally followed by **de** to avoid repeating the same word.
- ✓ **en** can also replace the partitive article.
- ✓ When **en** is used with **avoir** and **il y a** or with numbers, it is often not translated in English but can never be missed out in French.
- ✓ **y** is used with verbs and expressions normally followed by **à** to avoid repeating the same word.
- ✓ **y** can also mean *there* and may replace expressions that would be used with **dans** and **sur** or some other preposition indicating a place.
- ✓ **en** and **y** usually come before the verb, except in orders and instructions telling someone to do something, when **en** or **y** follows the verb and is attached to it with a hyphen.
- ✓ **en** and **y** come after other direct or indirect object pronouns.

Using different types of pronoun together

► Sometimes you find a direct object pronoun and an indirect object pronoun in the same sentence.

He gave **me** (indirect object) **them** (direct object).

He gave **them** (direct object) to **me** (indirect object).

► When this happens in French, you have to put the indirect and direct object pronouns in a certain order.

Indirect	Direct	Indirect	
me	le	lui	en
te	la	leur	y
nous	les		
vous			

Dominique vous l'envoie demain.

Dominique's sending it to you tomorrow.

Il te les a montrés?

Has he shown them to you?

Je les lui ai lus.

I read them to him/her.

Ne la leur donne pas.

Don't give it to them.

Elle ne m'en a pas parlé.

She didn't speak to me about it.

Key points

- ✓ If a direct and an indirect object pronoun are used in the same sentence, you usually put the indirect object pronoun before the direct object pronoun.
- ✓ With **lui** and **leur**, this order is reversed and you put the direct object pronoun before the indirect object pronoun.

Indefinite pronouns

What is an indefinite pronoun?

An **indefinite pronoun** is one of a small group of pronouns such as *everything*, *nobody* and *something* which are used to refer to people or things in a general way without saying exactly who or what they are.

➤ Here are the most common French indefinite pronouns:

- **chacun** (masculine singular)/**chacune** (feminine singular) each, everyone
Nous avons chacun donné dix euros. We each gave ten euros.
Chacun fait ce qu'il veut. Everyone does what they like.
Toutes les villas ont chacune leur piscine. Each villa has its own swimming pool.
- **personne** nobody/no one, anybody/anyone
Il n'y a personne à la maison. There's no one at home.
Elle ne veut voir personne. She doesn't want to see anybody.

⇒ For more information on **Negatives**, see page 138.

Tip

You can use **personne** on its own to answer a question.

Qui sait la réponse? Personne. Who knows the answer? No one.

If the sentence contains a verb you have to use **ne** with it.

Personne n'est venu. Nobody came.

- **quelque chose** something, anything
J'ai quelque chose pour toi. I've got something for you.
Avez-vous quelque chose à déclarer? Do you have anything to declare?
- **quelqu'un** somebody/someone, anybody/anyone
Il y a quelqu'un à la porte. There's someone at the door.
Quelqu'un a vu mon parapluie? Has anybody seen my umbrella?
- **rien** nothing, anything
Elle n'a rien dit. She didn't say anything.
Rien n'a changé. Nothing's changed.

⇒ For more information on **Negatives**, see page 138.

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

Tip

You can use **rien** on its own to answer a question.

'Qu'est-ce tu as acheté?' –

'What did you buy?' –

'Rien.'

'Nothing.'

If the sentence contains a verb you have to use **ne** with it.

Il n'a rien mangé.

He's eaten nothing.

- **tout** everything
Il organise tout. He's organizing everything.
Tout va bien? Is everything OK?
- **tous** (masculine plural)/**toutes** (feminine plural) all
Je les connais tous. I know them all.
Elles sont toutes arrivées? Are they all here?

➤ You can use **quelque chose de/rien de** and **quelqu'un de/personne de** with adjectives if you want to say *nothing interesting*, *something new* and so on.

rien d'intéressant

nothing interesting

Key points

- ✓ **rien** and **personne** can be used on their own to answer questions, but need to be used with **ne** when there is a verb in the sentence.
- ✓ **quelque chose/rien** and **quelqu'un/personne** can be followed by **de** + adjective.

Relative pronouns: **qui**, **que**, **lequel**, **auquel**, **duquel**

What is a relative pronoun?

In English a **relative pronoun** is one of the words *who*, *which* and *that* (and the more formal *whom*) which can be used to introduce information that makes it clear which person or thing is being talked about, for example, *The man who has just come in is Ann's boyfriend*; *The vase that you broke was quite valuable*.

Relative pronouns can also introduce further information about someone or something, for example, *Peter, who is a brilliant painter, wants to study art*; *Jane's house, which was built in 1890, needs a lot of repairs*.

- In French, the relative pronouns are **qui**, **que**, **lequel**, **auquel**, and **duquel**.

1 **qui** and **que**

- **qui** and **que** can both refer to people or things.

	Relative pronoun	Meaning
Subject	qui	who which that
Direct object	que	who, whom which that

Mon frère, qui a vingt ans, est à l'université.

My brother, who's twenty, is at university.

Est-ce qu'il y a un bus qui va au centre-ville?

Is there a bus that goes to the town centre?

Les amis que je vois le plus sont Léa et Mehdi.

The friends (that) I see most are Léa and Mehdi.

Voilà la maison que nous voulons acheter.

That's the house (which) we want to buy.

Tip

que changes to **qu'** in front of a word beginning with a vowel and most words beginning with **h**.

- **qui** is also used after a preposition such as **à**, **de** or **pour** to talk about people.

la personne à qui il parle

the person he is speaking to

les enfants pour qui j'ai acheté des bonbons

the children I bought sweets for

Tip

In English we often miss out the object pronouns *who*, *which* and *that*. For example, we can say both *the friends that I see most*, or *the friends I see most*, and *the house which we want to buy*, or *the house we want to buy*. In French you can **NEVER** miss out **que** or **qui** in this way.

2 **lequel**, **laquelle**, **lesquels**, **lesquelles**

- **lequel** (meaning *which*) is used after a preposition such as **à**, **de** or **pour** to talk about **things**. It has to agree with the noun it replaces.

	Masculine	Feminine	Meaning
Singular	lequel	laquelle	which
Plural	lesquels	lesquelles	which

le livre pour lequel elle est connue

the book she is famous for

la table sur laquelle j'ai mis mon sac

the table I put my bag on

- Remember that **à** and **de** combine with the definite article **le** to become **au** and **du**, and with **les** to become **aux** and **des**. **lequel/lesquels/lesquelles** combine with **à** and **de** as shown in the table. **laquelle** doesn't change.

	+ lequel	+ laquelle	+ lesquels	+ lesquelles	Meaning
à	auquel	à laquelle	auxquels	auxquelles	to which
de	duquel	de laquelle	desquels	desquelles	of which

- For more information on **à** and **de**, see pages 14 and 15.

Grammar Extra!

dont means *whose, of whom, of which, about which* and so on. It can refer to people or things, but its form **NEVER** changes.

la femme dont la voiture est

the woman whose car has broken

en panne

down

les films dont tu parles

the films you're talking about

Key points

- ✓ **qui** and **que** can both refer to people or things: **qui** is the subject of the part of the sentence it is found in; **que** is the object.
- ✓ In English we often miss out the object pronouns *who, which* and *that*, but in French you can never miss out **que** or **qui**.
- ✓ After a preposition you use **qui** if you are referring to people, and **lequel** if you are referring to things – **lequel** agrees with the noun it replaces.
- ✓ **à + lequel** → **auquel**
- ✓ **à + lesquels** → **auxquels**
- ✓ **à + lesquelles** → **auxquelles**
- ✓ **de + lequel** → **duquel**
- ✓ **de + lesquels** → **desquels**
- ✓ **de + lesquelles** → **desquelles**

Meaning	+ lesquels	+ lesquelles	+ lequel	+ laquelle
to which	auxquels	auxquelles	auquel	à laquelle
of which	desquels	desquelles	duquel	de laquelle

Demonstrative pronouns: **ce, cela/ça, ceci, celui**

What is a demonstrative pronoun?

In English a **demonstrative pronoun** is one of the words *this, that, these, and those* used instead of a noun to point people or things out, for example, *That looks fun.*

1 **ce**

- **ce** is usually used with the verb **être** (meaning *to be*) in the expressions **c'est** (meaning *it's, that's*), **c'était** (meaning *it was, that was*), **ce sont** (meaning *it's, that's*) and so on.

C'est moi.

It's me.

C'était mon frère.

That was my brother.

Ce sont eux.

It's them.

Tip

ce becomes **c'** when it is followed by a part of the verb that starts with **e** or **é**.

ce becomes **ç'** when it is followed by a part of the verb that starts with **a**.

Ç'a été difficile.

It was difficult.

Note that after **c'est** and **ce sont** and so on you have to use the emphatic form of the pronoun, for example, **moi** instead of **je**, **eux** instead of **ils** and so on.

C'est moi.

It's me.

➡ For more information on **Emphatic pronouns**, see page 51.

- **ce** is used:

- with a noun or a question word to identify a person or thing

Qui est-ce?	Who is it?, Who's this/that?
Ce sont des professeurs.	They're teachers.
Qu'est-ce que c'est?	What's this/that?
C'est un ouvre-boîte.	It's a tin-opener.

- with an adjective to refer to a statement, idea and so on that cannot be classed as either masculine or feminine

C'est très intéressant.

That's/It's very interesting.

C'est dangereux.

That's/It's dangerous.

Ce n'est pas grave.

It doesn't matter.

- for emphasis

C'est moi qui ai téléphoné.

It was me who phoned.

Ce sont les enfants qui ont fait le gâteau.

It was the children who made the cake.

2 **cela, ça and ceci**

- **cela** and **ça** mean *it, this or that*. Both refer to a statement, an idea or an object. **ça** is used instead of **cela** in everyday, informal French.

Ça ne fait rien.

It doesn't matter.

Écoute-moi ça!

Listen to this!

Cela dépend.

That/It depends.

Je n'aime pas cela.

I don't like that.

Donne-moi ça!

Give me that!

Tip

ça and **cela** are used in a more general way than **il** and **elle**, which are usually linked to a noun that has already been mentioned.

Ça te plaît d'aller à l'étranger? Do you like going abroad?

Elle te plaît, ma nouvelle voiture? Do you like my new car?

- **ceci** means *this* and is not as common as **cela** and **ça**. It is used to talk about something that has not yet been mentioned.

Lisez ceci.

Read this.

- **ceci** is also used to hand or show someone something.

Prends ceci. Tu en auras besoin. Take this. You'll need it.

3 **celui, celle, ceux, celles**

- **celui** and **celle** mean *the one*; **ceux** and **celles** mean *the ones*. The form you choose depends on whether the noun it is replacing is masculine or feminine, and singular or plural.

	Masculine	Feminine	Meaning
Singular	celui	celle	the one
Plural	ceux	celles	the ones

- **celui** and its other forms are used before:

- qui, que** or **dont**

'Quelle robe préférez-vous?'

'Which dress do you like best?'

– 'Celle qui est en vitrine.'

– 'The one in the window.'

Prends ceux que tu préfères.

Take the ones you like best.

celui dont je t'ai parlé

the one I told you about

- prepositions like **à, dans** and so on.

celui proche de la fontaine

the one near the fountain

- **celui** and its other forms can be used with **de** to show who something belongs to. In English, we would use 's.

**Je n'ai pas d'appareil photo
mais je peux emprunter celui
de ma sœur.**

I haven't got a camera but I can
borrow my sister's.

**Comparez vos réponses à
celles de votre voisin.**

Compare your answers with your
neighbour's.

- You can add the endings **-ci** and **-là** to **celui** and its other forms to emphasize the difference between something that is close to you and something that is further away.

- use **-ci** for something that is closer to you
- use **-là** for something that is further away

	Masculine	Feminine	Meaning
Singular	celui-ci celui-là	celle-ci celle-là	this, this one that, that one
Plural	ceux-ci ceux-là	celles-ci celles-là	these, these ones those, those ones

**On prend quel fromage?
Celui-ci ou celui-là?**

Which cheese shall we get? This
one or that one?

**Ces chemises ont deux poches
mais celles-là n'en ont pas.**

These shirts have two pockets but
those have none.

Key points

- ✓ **ce** is often found in the expressions **c'est**, **ce sont** and so on.
- ✓ **ce** is also used:
 - to identify a person or thing
 - to refer to a statement, idea and so on that cannot be classed as either masculine or feminine
 - for emphasis
- ✓ **cela** and **ça** mean *it, this or that*; **ceci** means *this*, but is not as common.
- ✓ **celui** and **celle** mean *the one*; **ceux** and **celles** mean *the ones*. They are often found with the endings **-ci** and **-là** and are used to distinguish between things which are close and things which are further away.

Meaning	French	English
Singular	celui-ci (masculine) celle-ci (feminine)	that one (close) that one (close)
Plural	ceux-ci (masculine) celles-ci (feminine)	those (close) those (close)
	celui-là (masculine) celle-là (feminine)	that one (far) that one (far)
	ceux-là (masculine) celles-là (feminine)	those (far) those (far)

VERBS

What is a verb?

A **verb** is a 'doing' word which describes what someone or something does, what someone or something is, or what happens to them, for example, *be, sing, live*.

The three conjugations

- Verbs are usually used with a noun, with a pronoun such as *I, you or she*, or with somebody's name. They can relate to the present, the past and the future; this is called their **tense**.

➡ For more information on **Nouns and Pronouns**, see pages 1 and 42.

- Verbs are either:

- **regular**; their forms follow the normal rules
- **irregular**; their forms do not follow the normal rules

- Regular English verbs have a **base form** (the form of the verb without any endings added to it, for example, *walk*). The base form can have *to* in front of it, for example, *to walk*. This is called the **infinitive**. You will find one of these forms when you look a verb up in your dictionary.

- French verbs also have an infinitive, which ends in **-er**, **-ir** or **-re**, for example, **donner** (meaning *to give*), **finir** (meaning *to finish*), **attendre** (meaning *to wait*). **Regular** French verbs belong to one of these three verb groups, which are called **conjugations**. We will look at each of these three conjugations in turn on the next few pages.

- English verbs have other forms apart from the base form and infinitive: a form ending in **-s** (*walks*), a form ending in **-ing** (*walking*), and a form ending in **-ed** (*walked*).

- French verbs have many more forms than this, which are made up of endings added to a **stem**. The stem of a verb can usually be worked out from the infinitive.

- French verb endings change, depending on who you are talking about: **je** (*I*), **tu** (*you*), **il/elle/on** (*he/she/one*) in the singular, or **nous** (*we*), **vous** (*you*) and **ils/elles** (*they*) in the plural. French verbs also have different forms depending on whether you are referring to the present, future or past.

- Some verbs in French do not follow the normal rules, and are called **irregular verbs**. These include some very common and important verbs like **avoir** (meaning *to have*), **être** (meaning *to be*), **faire** (meaning *to do, to make*) and **aller** (meaning *to go*). There is information on many of these irregular verbs in the following sections.

⇒ For **Verb tables**, see supplement.

Key points

- ✓ French verbs have different forms depending on what noun or pronoun they are used with, and on their tense.
- ✓ They are made up of a stem and an ending. The stem is usually based on the infinitive.
- ✓ Regular verbs fit into one of three patterns or conjugations: **-er**, **-ir**, or **-re** verbs.
- ✓ Irregular verbs do not follow the normal rules.

The present tense

What is the present tense?

The **present tense** is used to talk about what is true at the moment, what happens regularly and what is happening now, for example, *I'm a student*, *I travel to college by train*, *I'm studying languages*.

- You use a verb in the present tense to talk about:

- things that are happening now
It's raining.
The phone's ringing.
- things that happen all the time or at certain intervals, or things that you do as a habit
It always snows in January.
I play football on Saturdays.
- things that are true at the present time:
She's not very well.
It's a beautiful house.

- There is more than one way to express the present tense in English. For example, you can say either *I give*, *I am giving*, or occasionally *I do give*. In French you use the same form (**je donne**) for all of these!
- In English you can also use the present tense to talk about something that is going to happen in the near future. You can do the same in French.

Je vais en France le mois prochain. I'm going to France next month.

Nous prenons le train de dix heures. We're getting the ten o'clock train.

Tip

Although English sometimes uses parts of the verb *to be* to form the present tense of other verbs (for example, *I am listening*, *she's talking*), French **NEVER** uses the verb **être** in this way.

The present tense: regular -er (first conjugation) verbs

- If an infinitive in French ends in **-er**, it means the verb belongs to the **first conjugation**, for example, **donner**, **aimer**, **parler**.
- To know which form of the verb to use in French, you need to work out what the stem of the verb is and then add the correct ending. The stem of **-er** verbs in the present tense is formed by taking the **infinitive** and chopping off **-er**.

Infinitive	Stem (without -er)
donner (to give)	donn-
aimer (to like, to love)	aim-
parler (to speak, to talk)	parl-

- Now you know how to find the stem of a verb, you can add the correct ending. Which one you choose will depend on whether you are referring to **je**, **tu**, **il**, **elle**, **on**, **nous**, **vous**, **ils** or **elles**.

➡ For more information on **Pronouns**, see page 42.

- Here are the present tense endings for **-er** verbs:

Pronoun	Ending	Add to stem, e.g. donn-	Meanings
je (j')	-e	je donne	I give I am giving
tu	-es	tu donnes	you give you are giving
il elle on	-e	il donne elle donne on donne	he/she/it/one gives he/she/it/one is giving
nous	-ons	nous donnons	we give we are giving
vous	-ez	vous donnez	you give you are giving
ils elles	-ent	ils donnent elles donnent	they give they are giving

Marie **regarde** la télé.

Marie is watching TV.

Le train **arrive** à deux heures.

The train arrives at 2 o'clock.

Tip

je changes to **j'** in front of a word starting with a vowel (a, e, i, o or u), most words starting with **h**, and the French word **y**.

- ⑦ Note that there are a few regular **-er** verbs that are spelled slightly differently from the way you might expect.

➡ For more information on **Spelling changes in -er verbs**, see page 78.

Key points

- ✓ Verbs ending in **-er** belong to the first conjugation and form their present tense stem by losing the **-er** from the infinitive.
- ✓ The present tense endings for **-er** verbs are:
-e, -es, -e, -ons, -ez, -ent.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to stem, e.g. fin-	Meanings
je (j')	-is	je finis	I finish I am finishing
tu	-is	tu finis	you finish you are finishing
il elle on	-it	il finit elle finit on finit	he/she/it/one finishes he/she/it/one is finishing
nous	-issons	nous finissons	we finish we are finishing
vous	-issez	vous finissez	you finish you are finishing
ils elles	-issent	ils finissent elles finissent	they finish they are finishing

The present tense: regular **-ir** (second conjugation) verbs

- If an infinitive ends in **-ir**, it means the verb belongs to the **second conjugation**, for example, **finir**, **choisir**, **remplir**.
- The stem of **-ir** verbs in the present tense is formed by taking the **infinitive** and chopping off **-ir**.

Infinitive	Stem (without -ir)
finir (to finish)	fin-
choisir (to choose)	chois-
remplir (to fill, to fill in)	rempl-

- Now add the correct ending, depending on whether you are referring to **je**, **tu**, **il**, **elle**, **on**, **nous**, **vous**, **ils** or **elles**.

⇒ For more information on **Pronouns**, see page 42.

- Here are the present tense endings for **-ir** verbs:

Pronoun	Ending	Add to stem, e.g. fin-	Meanings
je (j')	-is	je finis	I finish I am finishing
tu	-is	tu finis	you finish you are finishing
il elle on	-it	il finit elle finit on finit	he/she/it/one finishes he/she/it/one is finishing
nous	-issons	nous finissons	we finish we are finishing
vous	-issez	vous finissez	you finish you are finishing
ils elles	-issent	ils finissent elles finissent	they finish they are finishing

Le cours finit à onze heures.
Je finis mes devoirs.

The lesson finishes at eleven o'clock.
I'm finishing my homework.

Tip

je changes to **j'** in front of a word starting with a vowel, most words starting with **h**, and the French word **y**.

- The **nous** and **vous** forms of **-ir** verbs have an extra syllable.

tu finis (two syllables)

vous finis (three syllables)

Key points

- ✓ Verbs ending in **-ir** belong to the second conjugation and form their present tense stem by losing the **-ir** from the infinitive.
- ✓ The present tense endings for **-ir** verbs are:
-is, -is, -it, -issons, -issez, -issent.
- ✓ Remember the extra syllable in the **nous** and **vous** forms.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to stem, e.g. attend-	Meanings
je (j')	-s	j'attends	I wait I am waiting
tu	-s	tu attends	you wait you are waiting
il elle on	-t	il attend elle attend on attend	he/she/it/one waits he/she/it/one is waiting
nous	-ons	nous attendons	we wait we are waiting
vous	-ez	vous attendez	you wait you are waiting
ils elles	-ent	ils attendent elles attendent	they wait they are waiting

J'attends ma sœur.
Chaque matin nous attendons le train ensemble.
I'm waiting for my sister.
Every morning we wait for the train together.

The present tense: regular -re (third conjugation) verbs

- If an infinitive ends in **-re**, it means the verb belongs to the third conjugation, for example, **attendre**, **vendre**, **entendre**.
- The stem of **-re** verbs in the present tense is formed by taking the infinitive and chopping off **-re**.

Infinitive	Stem (without -re)
attendre (to wait)	attend-
vendre (to sell)	vend-
entendre (to hear)	entend-

- Now add the correct ending, depending on whether you are referring to **je, tu, il, elle, on, nous, vous, ils** or **elles**.

➡ For more information on **Pronouns**, see page 42.

- Here are the present tense endings for **-re** verbs:

Pronoun	Ending	Add to stem, e.g. attend-	Meanings
je (j')	-s	j'attends	I wait I am waiting
tu	-s	tu attends	you wait you are waiting
il elle on	-	il attend elle attend on attend	he/she/it/one waits he/she/it/one is waiting
nous	-ons	nous attendons	we wait we are waiting
vous	-ez	vous attendez	you wait you are waiting
ils elles	-ent	ils attendent elles attendent	they wait they are waiting

J'attends ma sœur.

**Chaque matin nous attendons
le train ensemble.**

I'm waiting for my sister.

Every morning we wait for the train
together.

Tip

je changes to **j'** in front of a word starting with a vowel, most words starting with **h**, and the French word **y**.

Key points

- ✓ Verbs ending in **-re** belong to the third conjugation and form their present tense stem by losing the **-re** from the infinitive.
- ✓ The present tense endings for **-re** verbs are:
-s, -s, -, -, -ons, -ez, -ent.

The present tense: spelling changes in -er verbs

- Learning the patterns shown on pages 72–73 means you can now work out the forms of most **-er** verbs. A few verbs, though, involve a small spelling change. This is usually to do with how a word is pronounced. In the tables below the form(s) with the irregular spelling is/are underlined>.

1 Verbs ending in -cer

- With verbs such as **lancer** (meaning *to throw*), which end in **-cer**, **c** becomes **ç** before an **a** or an **o**. This is so the letter **c** is still pronounced as in the English word *ice*.

Pronoun	Example verb: lancer
je	lance
tu	lances
il elle on	lance
nous	lan<u>ç</u>ons
vous	lance<u>z</u>
ils elles	lancent

2 Verbs ending in -ger

- With verbs such as **manger** (meaning *to eat*), which end in **-ger**, **g** becomes **ge** before an **a** or an **o**. This is so the letter **g** is still pronounced like the **s** in the English word *leisure*.

Pronoun	Example verb: manger
je	mange
tu	manges
il elle on	mange
nous	man<u>ge</u>ons
vous	man<u>ge</u>ez
ils elles	man<u>ge</u>nt

3 Verbs ending in -eler

- With verbs such as **appeler** (meaning *to call*), which end in **-eler**, the **l** doubles before **-e**, **-es** and **-ent**. The double consonant (**ll**) affects the pronunciation of the word. In **appeler**, the first **e** sounds like the vowel sound at the end of the English word *teacher*, but in **appelle** the first **e** sounds like the one in the English word *pet*.

Pronoun	Example verb: appeler
j'	appelle
tu	appelles
il elle on	appelle
nous	appelons
vous	appelez
ils elles	appellent

- The exceptions to this rule are **geler** (meaning *to freeze*) and **peler** (meaning *to peel*), which change in the same way as **lever** (see page 81).
- Verbs like this are sometimes called '1, 2, 3, 6 verbs' because they change in the first person singular (**je**), second person singular (**tu**), and third person singular and plural (**il/elle/on** and **ils/elles**).

4 Verbs ending in -eter

- With verbs such as **jeter** (meaning *to throw*), which end in **-eter**, the **t** doubles before **-e**, **-es** and **-ent**. The double consonant (**tt**) affects the pronunciation of the word. In **jeter**, the first **e** sounds like the vowel sound at the end of the English word *teacher*, but in **jette** the first **e** sounds like the one in the English word *pet*.

Pronoun	Example verb: jeter
je	jette
tu	jettes
il elle on	jette
nous	jetons
vous	jetez
ils elles	jettent

- The exceptions to this rule include **acheter** (meaning *to buy*), which changes in the same way as **lever** (see page 81).
- Verbs like this are sometimes called '1, 2, 3, 6 verbs'.

5 Verbs ending in -yer

- With verbs such as **nettoyer** (meaning *to clean*), which end in **-yer**, the **y** changes to **i** before **-e**, **-es** and **-ent**.

Pronoun	Example verb: nettoyer
je	nettoie
tu	nettoies
il elle on	nettoie
nous	nettoyons
vous	nettoyez
ils elles	nettoient

- Verbs ending in **-ayer**, such as **payer** (meaning *to pay*) and **essayer** (meaning *to try*), can be spelled with either a **y** or an **i**. So **je paie** and **je paye**, for example, are both correct.
- Verbs like this are sometimes called '1, 2, 3, 6 verbs'.

6 Changes involving accents

- With verbs such as **lever** (meaning *to raise*), **peser** (meaning *to weigh*) and **acheter** (meaning *to buy*), **e** changes to **è** before the consonant + **-e**, **-es** and **-ent**. The accent changes the pronunciation too. In **lever** the first **e** sounds like the vowel sound at the end of the English word *teacher*, but in **lève** and so on the first **e** sounds like the one in the English word *pet*.

Pronoun	Example verb: lever
je	lève
tu	lèves
il elle on	lève
nous	levons
vous	levez
ils elles	lèvent

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

- With verbs such as **espérer** (meaning *to hope*), **régler** (meaning *to adjust*) and **préférer** (meaning *to prefer*), **é** changes to **è** before the consonant + **-e**, **-es** and **-ent**.

Pronoun	Example verb: espérer
j'	espère
tu	espères
il elle on	espère
nous	espérons
vous	espérez
ils elles	espèrent

- Verbs like this are sometimes called '1, 2, 3, 6 verbs'.

Key points

- ✓ In verbs ending in **-cer** and **-ger**:
c → **ç** and **g** → **ge** in the **nous** form.
- ✓ In verbs ending in **-eler** and **-eter**:
l → **ll** and **t** → **tt** in all but the **nous** and **vous** forms.
- ✓ In verbs ending in **-yer**:
y → **i** in all but the **nous** and **vous** forms (optional in **-ayer** verbs).

The present tense: irregular verbs

- Some verbs in French do not follow the normal rules. These verbs include some very common and important verbs like **avoir** (meaning *to have*), **être** (meaning *to be*), **faire** (meaning *to do, to make*) and **aller** (meaning *to go*). The present tense of these four verbs is given in full below.

⇒ For *Verb tables*, see supplement.

1 The present tense of **avoir**

Pronoun	avoir	Meaning: to have
j'	ai	I have
tu	as	you have
il elle on	a	he/she/it/one has
nous	avons	we have
vous	avez	you have
ils elles	ont	they have

J'ai deux sœurs.

I have two sisters.

Il a les yeux bleus.

He has blue eyes.

Elle a trois ans.

She's three.

Qu'est-ce qu'il y a?

What's the matter?

2 The present tense of **être**

Pronoun	être	Meaning: to be
je	suis	I am
tu	es	you are
il elle on	est	he/she/it/one is
nous	sommes	we are
vous	êtes	you are
ils elles	sont	they are

Je suis heureux.

I'm happy.

Mon père est instituteur.

My father's a primary school teacher.

Il est deux heures.

It's two o'clock.

3 The present tense of **faire**

Pronoun	faire	Meaning: to do, to make
je	fais	I do/make I am doing/making
tu	fais	you do/make you are doing/making
il elle on	fait	he/she/it/one does/makes he/she/it/one is doing/making
nous	faisons	we do/make we are doing/making
vous	faites	you do/make you are doing/making
ils elles	font	they do/make they are doing/making

Je fais un gâteau.

I'm making a cake.

Qu'est-ce que tu fais?

What are you doing?

Il fait chaud.

It's hot.

Ça ne fait rien.

It doesn't matter.

4 The present tense of **aller**

Pronoun	aller	Meaning: to go
je	vais	I go I am going
tu	vas	you go you are going
il elle on	va	he/she/it/one goes he/she/it/one is going
nous	allons	we go we are going
vous	allez	you go you are going
ils elles	vont	they go they are going

Je vais à Londres.

I'm going to London.

'Comment allez-vous?' – 'Je vais bien.'

'How are you?' – 'I'm fine.'

'Comment ça va?' – 'Ça va bien.' 'How are you?' – 'I'm fine.'

5 Irregular -ir verbs

- Many irregular verbs that end in **-ir**, such as **partir** (meaning *to go*) and **tenir** (meaning *to hold*), have a common pattern in the singular. The **je** and **tu** forms often end in **-s**, and the **il/elle/on** form often ends in **-t**.

Pronoun	partir	tenir
je	par <u>s</u>	tie <u>ns</u>
tu	par <u>s</u>	tie <u>ns</u>
il/elle/on	par <u>t</u>	tie <u>t</u>

Je pars demain. I'm leaving tomorrow.

Elle tient le bébé. She is holding the baby.

⇒ For Verb tables, see supplement.

Key points

- ✓ Some very important French verbs are irregular, including **avoir**, **être**, **faire** and **aller**. They are worth learning in full.
- ✓ The **-s**, **-s**, **-t** pattern occurs frequently in irregular **-ir** verbs.

The imperative

What is the imperative?

An **imperative** is a form of the verb used when giving orders and instructions, for example, *Shut the door!*; *Sit down!*; *Don't go!*

1 Using the imperative

- In French, there are two forms of the imperative that are used to give instructions or orders to someone. These correspond to **tu** and **vous**.

⇒ For more information on the difference between **tu** and **vous**, see page 43.

- There is also a form of the imperative that corresponds to **nous**. This means the same as *let's* in English. It is not used as often as the **tu** and **vous** forms.

2 Forming the present tense imperative

- For regular verbs, the imperative is the same as the **tu**, **nous** and **vous** forms of the present tense, except that you do not say the pronouns **tu**, **nous** and **vous**. Also, in the **tu** form of **-er** verbs like **donner**, the final **-s** is dropped.

Pronoun	-er verbs: donner	Meaning	-ir verbs: finir	Meaning	-re verbs: attendre	Meaning
tu	donne	give	finis	finish	attends	wait
nous	donnons	let's give	finissons	let's finish	attendons	let's wait
vous	donnez	give	finissez	finish	attendez	wait

Donne-moi ça!

Give me that!

Finissez vos devoirs et allez vous coucher.

Finish your homework and go to bed.

Attendons le bus.

Let's wait for the bus.

Tip

When a **tu** imperative comes before **en** or **y**, the final **-s** is kept to make the words easier to pronounce. The **s** is pronounced like the **z** in the English word *zip*:

Vas-y!

Go on!

Donnes-en à ton frère.

Give some to your brother.

3 Where to put the object pronoun

- An object pronoun is a word like **la** (meaning *her/it*), **me/moi** (meaning *me*) or **leur** (meaning *to them*) that is used instead of a noun as the object of a sentence. In orders and instructions, the position of these object pronouns in the sentence changes depending on whether you are telling someone **TO DO** something or **NOT TO DO** something.

⇒ For more information on **Object pronouns**, see page 47.

- If you are telling someone **NOT TO DO** something, you put the object pronouns **BEFORE** the verb.

Ne me dérange pas.

Don't disturb me.

Ne leur parlons pas.

Let's not speak to them.

Ne le regardez pas.

Don't look at him/it.

- If you are telling someone **TO DO** something, you put the object pronouns **AFTER** the verb and join the two words with a hyphen. The word order is the same as in English.

Excusez-moi.

Excuse me.

Aidez-nous.

Help us.

Attendons-la.

Let's wait for her/it.

- Orders and instructions telling someone to do something may contain **direct object** and **indirect object pronouns**. When this happens, the pronouns go in this order:

DIRECT		INDIRECT
le		moi
la	BEFORE	toi
les		lui
		nous
		vous
		leur

Prête-les moi!

Lend them to me! or Lend me them!

Donnez-la-nous!

Give it to us! or Give us it!

⇒ For imperatives using **Reflexive verbs**, see page 90.

4 Imperative forms of irregular verbs

- **avoir** (meaning *to have*), **être** (meaning *to be*), **savoir** (meaning *to know*) and **vouloir** (meaning *to want*) have irregular imperative forms.

Pronoun	avoir	être	savoir	vouloir
tu	aie	sois	sache	veuille
nous	ayons	soyons	sachons	veuillons
vous	ayez	soyez	sachez	veuillez

Sois sage.

Be good.

Veillez fermer la porte.

Please shut the door.

Key points

- ✓ The imperative has three forms: **tu**, **nous** and **vous**.
- ✓ The forms are the same as the **tu**, **nous** and **vous** forms of the present tense, except that the final **-s** is dropped in the **tu** form of **-er** verbs.
- ✓ Object pronouns go before the verb when you are telling someone not to do something, but after the verb with a hyphen when you are telling someone to do something.
- ✓ **avoir**, **être**, **savoir** and **vouloir** have irregular imperative forms.

Reflexive verbs

What is a reflexive verb?

A **reflexive verb** is one where the subject and object are the same, and where the action 'reflects back' on the subject. It is used with a reflexive pronoun such as *myself*, *yourself* and *herself* in English, for example, *I washed myself; He shaved himself*.

1 Using reflexive verbs

- In French, reflexive verbs are much more common than in English, and many are used in everyday French. They are shown in dictionaries as **se** plus the infinitive (**se** means *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves* or *oneself*). **se** is called a **reflexive pronoun**.

Tip

se changes to **s'** in front of a word starting with a vowel, most words starting with **h**, and the French word **y**.

- Reflexive verbs are often used to describe things you do (to yourself) every day or that involve a change of some sort (going to bed, sitting down, getting angry, going to sleep). Some of the most common French reflexive verbs are listed here:

s'amuser	to play, to enjoy oneself
s'appeler	to be called
s'arrêter	to stop
s'asseoir	to sit down
se baigner	to go swimming
se coucher	to go to bed
se dépêcher	to hurry
s'habiller	to get dressed
s'intéresser à quelque chose	to be interested in something
se laver	to wash, to have a wash
se lever	to get up, to rise, to stand up
se passer	to take place, to happen, to go
se promener	to go for a walk
se rappeler	to remember
se réveiller	to wake up
se trouver	to be (situated)

Qu'est-ce qui se passe?

What's happening?

Le soleil se lève à cinq heures.

The sun rises at five o'clock.

Asseyez-vous!

Sit down!

- 7 Note that **se** and **s'** are very rarely translated as *himself* and so on in English.
- Some French verbs can be used with a reflexive pronoun or without a reflexive pronoun, for example, the verbs **appeler** and **s'appeler**, and **arrêter** and **s'arrêter**. Sometimes, however, their meaning may change.

Appelle le chien.

Call the dog.

Je m'appelle Jacques.

I'm called Jacques.

Il arrête le moteur.

He switches off the engine.

Elle s'arrête devant une vitrine.

She stops in front of a shop window.

2 Forming the present tense of reflexive verbs

- To use a reflexive verb in French, you need to decide which reflexive pronoun to use. The forms shown in brackets in the table are used before a word starting with a vowel, most words starting with **h**, or the French word **y**.

Subject pronoun	Reflexive pronoun	Meaning
je	me (m')	myself
tu	te (t')	yourself
il	se (s')	himself
elle		herself
on		itself
		oneself
nous	nous	ourselves
vous	vous	yourself (<i>singular</i>) yourselves (<i>plural</i>)
ils	se (s')	themselves
elles		

Je me lève tôt.

I get up early.

Elle s'habille.

She's getting dressed.

Ils s'intéressent beaucoup aux animaux.

They're very interested in animals.

- The present tense forms of a reflexive verb work in just the same way as an ordinary verb, except that the reflexive pronoun is used as well.

Reflexive forms	Meaning
je me lave	I wash (myself)
tu te laves	you wash (yourself)
il se lave	he washes (himself)
elle se lave	she washes (herself)
on se lave	it washes (itself) one washes (oneself)
nous nous lavons	we wash (ourselves)
vous vous lavez	you wash (yourself) (<i>singular</i>) you wash (yourselves) (<i>plural</i>)
ils se lavent	they wash (themselves)
elles se lavent	

- Some reflexive verbs, such as **s'asseoir** (meaning *to sit down*), are irregular. Some of these irregular verbs are shown in the **Verb tables**.

➡ For **Verb tables**, see supplement.

3 Where to put the reflexive pronoun

- In the present tense, the reflexive pronoun almost always comes **BEFORE** the verb.

Je me couche tôt.	I go to bed early.
Comment t'appelles-tu?	What's your name?

- When telling someone **NOT TO DO** something, you put the reflexive pronoun **BEFORE** the verb as usual.

Ne te lève pas.	Don't get up.
Ne vous habillez pas.	Don't get dressed.

- When telling someone **TO DO** something, you put the reflexive pronoun **AFTER** the verb and join the two words with a hyphen.

Lève-toi!	Get up!
Dépêchez-vous!	Hurry up!
Habillons-nous.	Let's get dressed.

Tip

When you are telling someone **TO DO** something, **te** or **t'** changes to **toi**.

Assieds-toi.

Sit down.

When you are telling someone **NOT TO DO** something, **te** or **t'** is used, not **toi**.

Ne te lève pas.

Don't get up.

➡ For more information on the **Imperative**, see page 85.

4 Each other and one another

- We use *each other* in English when we are talking about two people, and *one another* when we are talking about three or more people. The French reflexive pronouns **nous**, **vous** and **se** can all mean two or more people.

Nous nous parlons tous les jours.

We speak to each other every day.

On se voit demain?

Shall we see each other tomorrow?

Les trois pays se ressemblent beaucoup.

The three countries are really like one another.

Key points

- ✓ A reflexive verb is made up of a reflexive pronoun and a verb.
- ✓ The reflexive pronouns are: **me**, **te**, **se**, **nous**, **vous**, **se** (**m'**, **t'**, **s'**, **nous**, **vous**, **s'** before a vowel, most words beginning with **h** and the French word **y**).
- ✓ The reflexive pronoun comes before the verb, except when you are telling someone to do something.

The imperfect tense

What is the imperfect tense?

The **imperfect tense** is one of the verb tenses used to talk about the past, especially in descriptions, and to say what used to happen, for example, *I used to walk to school; It was sunny at the weekend.*


1 Using the imperfect tense

➤ The imperfect tense is used:

- to describe what things were like and how people felt in the past
I was very sad when she left.
It was pouring with rain.
- to say what used to happen or what you used to do regularly in the past
We used to get up very early in those days.
I never used to like milk.
- to indicate things that were happening or something that was true when something else took place

I was watching TV when the phone rang.

As we were looking out of the window, we saw someone walk across the lawn.

 Note that if you want to talk about an event or action that took place and was completed in the past, you use the **perfect tense**.

⇒ For more information on the **Perfect tense**, see page 111.

➤ You can often recognize an imperfect tense in English because it uses a form like *were looking* or *was raining*. The words *used to* also show an imperfect tense.

Tip

Remember that you **NEVER** use the verb **être** to translate *was* or *were* in forms like *was raining* or *were looking* and so on. You change the French verb ending instead.

2 Forming the imperfect tense of -er verbs

➤ To form the imperfect tense of **-er** verbs, you use the same stem of the verb as for the present tense. Then you add the correct ending, depending on whether you are referring to **je, tu, il, elle, on, nous, vous, ils** or **elles**.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to stem, e.g. donn-	Meanings
je (j')	-ais	je donnais	I gave I was giving I used to give
tu	-ais	tu donnais	you gave you were giving you used to give
il elle on	-ait	il donnait elle donnait on donnait	he/she/it/one gave he/she/it/one was giving he/she/it/one used to give
nous	-ions	nous donnions	we gave we were giving we used to give
vous	-iez	vous donniez	you gave you were giving you used to give
ils elles	-aient	ils donnaient elles donnaient	they gave they were giving they used to give

Il portait toujours un grand chapeau noir.

He always wore a big black hat.

Nous habitions à Paris à cette époque.

We were living in Paris at that time.

Pour gagner un peu d'argent, je donnais des cours de français.

To earn a little money I used to give French lessons.

Tip

je changes to **j'** in front of a word starting with a vowel, most words starting with **h**, and the French word **y**.

3 Forming the imperfect tense of **-ir** verbs

- To form the imperfect tense of **-ir** verbs, you use the same stem of the verb as for the present tense. Then you add the correct ending, depending on whether you are referring to **je, tu, il, elle, on, nous, vous, ils** or **elles**.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to stem, e.g. fin-	Meanings
je (j')	-issais	je finissais	I finished I was finishing I used to finish
tu	-issais	tu finissais	you finished you were finishing you used to finish
il elle on	-issait	il finissait elle finissait on finissait	he/she/it/one finished he/she/it/one was finishing he/she/it/one used to finish
nous	-issions	nous finissions	we finished we were finishing we used to finish
vous	-issiez	vous finissiez	you finished you were finishing you used to finish
ils elles	-issaient	ils finissaient elles finissaient	they finished they were finishing they used to finish

Il finissait souvent ses devoirs avant le dîner.

He often finished his homework before dinner.

Cet après-midi-là ils choisissaient une bague de fiançailles.

That afternoon they were choosing an engagement ring.

4 Forming the imperfect tense of **-re** verbs

- To form the imperfect tense of **-re** verbs, you use the same stem of the verb as for the present tense. Then you add the correct ending, depending on whether you are referring to **je, tu, il, elle, on, nous, vous, ils** or **elles**. These endings are the same as for **-er** verbs.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to stem, e.g. attend-	Meanings
j' (j')	-ais	j'attendais	I waited I was waiting I used to wait
tu	-ais	tu attendais	you waited you were waiting you used to wait
il elle on	-ait	il attendait elle attendait on attendait	he/she/it/one waited he/she/it/one was waiting he/she/it/one used to wait
nous	-ions	nous attendions	we waited we were waiting we used to wait
vous	-iez	vous attendiez	you waited you were waiting you used to wait
ils elles	-aient	ils attendaient elles attendaient	they waited they were waiting they used to wait

Christine m'attendait tous les soirs à la sortie.

Christine used to wait for me every evening at the exit.

Je vivais seule après mon divorce.

I was living alone after my divorce.

5 Spelling changes in **-er** verbs

- As with the present tense, a few **-er** verbs change their spellings slightly when they are used in the imperfect tense. The forms with spelling changes have been underlined in the tables.
- With verbs such as **lancer** (meaning *to throw*), which end in **-cer, c** becomes **ç** before an **a** or an **o**. This is so that the letter **c** is still pronounced as in the English word *ice*.

Pronoun	Example verb: lancer
je	lançais
tu	lançais
il elle on	lançait
nous	lancions
vous	lanciez
ils elles	lançaient

- With verbs such as **manger** (meaning *to eat*), which end in **-ger, g** becomes **ge** before an **a** or an **o**. This is so the letter **g** is still pronounced like the **s** in the English word *leisure*.

Pronoun	Example verb: manger
je	mangeais
tu	mangeais
il elle on	mangeait
nous	mangions
vous	mangiez
ils elles	mangeaient

- These verbs follow the 1,2,3,6 pattern. That is, they change in the first, second and third person singular, and in the third person plural.

6 Reflexive verbs in the imperfect tense

- The imperfect tense of reflexive verbs is formed just as for ordinary verbs, except that you add the reflexive pronoun (**me, te, se, nous, vous, se**).

Subject pronoun	Reflexive pronoun	Example with laver	Meaning
je	me (m')	lavais	I washed I was washing I used to wash
tu	te (t')	lavais	you washed you were washing you used to wash
il elle on	se (s')	lavait	he/she/it/one washed he/she/it/one was washing he/she/it/one used to wash
nous	nous	lavions	we washed we were washing we used to wash
vous	vous	laviez	you washed you were washing you used to wash
ils elles	se (s')	lavaient	they washed they were washing they used to wash

Tip

me changes to **m'**, **te** to **t'** and **se** to **s'** before a vowel, most words starting with **h** and the French word **y**.

7 Irregular verbs in the imperfect tense

- The only verb that is irregular in the imperfect tense is **être**.

Pronoun	être	Meaning
j'	étais	I was
tu	étais	you were
il elle on	était	he/she/it/one was
nous	étions	we were
vous	étiez	you were
ils elles	étaient	they were

J'étais heureux.

I was happy.

Mon père était instituteur.

My father was a primary school teacher.

Key points

- ✓ The imperfect tense endings for **-er** and **-re** verbs are:
-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient.
- ✓ The imperfect tense endings for **-ir** verbs are:
-issais, -issais, -issait, -issions, -issiez, -issaient.
- ✓ In verbs ending in **-cer** and **-ger**:
c → ç and **g → ge** in all but the **nous** and **vous** forms.
- ✓ **être** is irregular in the imperfect tense.

The future tense

What is the future tense?

The **future tense** is a verb tense used to talk about something that will happen or will be true.

1 Using the future tense

- In English the future tense is often shown by *will* or its shortened form *'ll*.

What will you do?

The weather will be warm and dry tomorrow.

He 'll be here soon.

I 'll give you a call.

- Just as in English, you can use the present tense in French to refer to something that is going to happen in the future.

Je prends le train de dix heures. I'm taking the ten o'clock train.

Nous allons à Paris la semaine prochaine. We're going to Paris next week.

- In English we often use *going to* followed by an infinitive to talk about something that will happen in the immediate future. You can use the French verb **aller** (meaning *to go*) followed by an infinitive in the same way.

Tu vas tomber si tu continues. You're going to fall if you carry on.

Il va manquer le train. He's going to miss the train.

Tip

Remember that French has no direct equivalent of the word *will* in verb forms like *will rain* or *will look* and so on. You change the French verb ending instead to form the future tense.

2 Forming the future tense

- To form the future tense in French, you use:
- the **infinitive** of **-er** and **-ir** verbs, for example, **donner, finir**
 - the **infinitive** without the final **e** of **-re** verbs: for example, **attendr-**
- Then add the correct ending to the stem, depending on whether you are talking about **je, tu, il, elle, on, nous, vous, ils** or **elles**. The endings are the same for **-er, -ir** and **-re** verbs.

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

- 7 Note that apart from the **nous** and **vous** forms, the endings are the same as the present tense of **avoir**.

➡ For the present tense of **avoir**, see page 82.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to stem, e.g. donner-, finir-, attendr-	Meanings
je (j')	-ai	je donnerai je finirai j'attendrai	I will give I will finish I will wait
tu	-as	tu donneras tu finiras tu attendras	you will give you will finish you will wait
il elle on	-a	il/elle/on donnera il/elle/on finira il/elle/on attendra	he/she/it/one will give he/she/it/one will finish he/she/it/one will wait
nous	-ons	nous donnerons nous finirons nous attendrons	we will give we will finish we will wait
vous	-ez	vous donnerez vous finirez vous attendrez	you will give you will finish you will wait
ils elles	-ont	ils/elles donneront ils/elles finiront ils/elles attendront	they will give they will finish they will wait

Elle te donnera mon adresse.

Le cours finira à onze heures.

Nous t'attendrons devant le cinéma.

She'll give you my address.

The lesson will finish at eleven o'clock.

We'll wait for you in front of the cinema.

Tip

je changes to **j'** in front of a word starting with a vowel, most words starting with **h**, and the French word **y**.

3 Spelling changes in -er verbs

- As with the present and imperfect tenses, a few **-er** verbs change their spellings slightly in the future tense. The forms with spelling changes have been underlined in the tables.

- With verbs such as **appeler** (meaning *to call*), which end in **-eler**, the **l** doubles throughout the future tense. The double consonant (**ll**) affects the pronunciation of the word. In **appeler**, the first **e** sounds like the vowel sound at the end of the English word *teacher*, but in **appellerai** the first **e** sounds like the one in the English word *pet*.

Pronoun	Example verb: appeler
je	appellerai
tu	appelleras
il elle on	appellera
nous	appellerons
vous	appellerez
ils elles	appelleront

- The exceptions to this rule are **geler** (meaning *to freeze*) and **peler** (meaning *to peel*), which change in the same way as **lever** (see page 101).
- With verbs such as **jeter** (meaning *to throw*), that end in **-eter**, the **t** doubles throughout the future tense. The double consonant (**tt**) affects the pronunciation of the word. In **jeter**, the first **e** sounds like the vowel sound at the end of the English word *teacher*, but in **jetterai** the first **e** sounds like the one in the English word *pet*.

Pronoun	Example verb: jeter
je	jetterai
tu	jetteras
il elle on	jettera
nous	jetterons
vous	jetterez
ils elles	jetteront

- The exceptions to this rule include **acheter** (meaning *to buy*), which changes in the same way as **lever** (see page 101).

- With verbs such as **nettoyer** (meaning *to clean*), that end in **-yer**, the **y** changes to **i** throughout the future tense.

Pronoun	Example verb: nettoyer
je	nettoierai
tu	nettoieras
il elle on	nettoiera
nous	nettoierons
vous	nettoierez
ils elles	nettoieront

- Verbs ending in **-ayer**, such as **payer** (meaning *to pay*) and **essayer** (meaning *to try*), can be spelled with either a **y** or an **i**. So **je paierai** and **je payerai**, for example, are both correct.
- With verbs such as **lever** (meaning *to raise*), **peser** (meaning *to weigh*) and **acheter** (meaning *to buy*), **e** changes to **è** throughout the future tense. In **lever** the first **e** sounds like the vowel sound at the end of the English word *teacher*, but in **lèverai** and so on the first **e** sounds like the one in the English word *pet*.

Pronoun	Example verb: lever
je	lèverai
tu	lèveras
il elle on	lèvera
nous	lèverons
vous	lèverez
ils elles	lèveront

4 Reflexive verbs in the future tense

- The future tense of reflexive verbs is formed in just the same way as for ordinary verbs, except that you have to remember to give the reflexive pronoun (**me, se, nous, vous, se**).

Subject pronoun	Reflexive pronoun	Example with laver	Meaning
je	me (m')	laverai	I will wash
tu	te (t')	laveras	you will wash
il elle on	se (s')	lavera	he/she/it/one will wash
nous	nous	laverons	we will wash
vous	vous	laverez	you will wash
ils elles	se (s')	laveront	they will wash

Tip

me changes to **m'**, **te** to **t'** and **se** to **s'** before a vowel, most words starting with **h** and the French word **y**.

5 Irregular verbs in the future tense

- There are some verbs that do not use their infinitives as the stem for the future tense, including **avoir**, **être**, **faire** and **aller**, which are shown in full on pages 103–104.
- Other irregular verbs include:

Verb	Meaning	je	tu	il/elle/on	nous	vous	ils/elles
devoir	to have to, must	devrai	devras	devra	devrons	devrez	devront
pouvoir	to be able to, can	pourrai	pourras	pourra	pourrons	pourrez	pourront
savoir	to know	saurai	sauras	saura	saurons	saurez	sauront
tenir	to hold	tiendrai	tiendras	tiendra	tiendrons	tiendrez	tiendront
venir	to come	viendrai	viendras	viendra	viendrons	viendrez	viendront
voir	to see	verrai	verras	verra	verrons	verrez	verront
vouloir	to want	voudrai	voudras	voudra	voudrons	voudrez	voudront

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii–xii.

- **il faut** becomes **il faudra** (meaning *it will be necessary to*).

- **il pleut** becomes **il pleuvra** (meaning *it will rain*).

- This is the future tense of **avoir**:

Pronoun	avoir	Meaning: to have
j'	aurai	I will have
tu	auras	you will have
il elle on	aura	he/she/it/one will have
nous	aurons	we will have
vous	aurez	you will have
ils elles	auront	they will have

- This is the future tense of **être**:

Pronoun	être	Meaning: to be
je	serai	I will be
tu	seras	you will be
il elle on	sera	he/she/it/one will be
nous	serons	we will be
vous	serez	you will be
ils elles	seront	they will be

- This is the future tense of **faire**:

Pronoun	faire	Meaning: to do, to make
je	ferai	I will do/make
tu	feras	you will do/make
il elle on	fera	he/she/it/one will do/make
nous	ferons	we will do/make
vous	ferez	you will do/make
ils elles	feront	they will do/make

For more information on the Imperfect tense and the Future tense, see pages 92 and 98.

➤ This is the future tense of **aller**:

Pronoun	aller	Meaning: to go
j'	irai	I will go
tu	iras	you will go
il elle on	ira	he/she/it/one will go
nous	irons	we will go
vous	irez	you will go
ils elles	iront	they will go

➡ For *Verb tables*, see supplement.

Key points

- ✓ You can use a present tense in French to talk about something that will happen or be true in the future, just as in English.
- ✓ You can use **aller** with an infinitive to refer to things that will happen in the immediate future.
- ✓ The stem is the same as the infinitive for **-er**, **-ir** and **-re** verbs, except that the final **-e** of **-re** verbs is lost.
- ✓ The future tense endings are the same for **-er**, **-ir** and **-re** verbs: **-ai**, **-as**, **-a**, **-ons**, **-ez**, **-ont**.
- ✓ In verbs ending in **-eler** and **-eter**:
l → ll and t → tt throughout the future tense.
- ✓ In verbs ending in **-yer**:
y → i throughout the future tense (optional in **-ayer** verbs).
- ✓ Some verbs are irregular in the future tense. It is worth learning these in full.

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

The conditional

What is the conditional?

The **conditional** is a verb form used to talk about things that would happen or that would be true under certain conditions, for example, I would help you if I could.

It is also used to say what you would like or need, for example, Could you give me the bill?

1 Using the conditional

- You can often recognize a conditional in English by the word *would* or its shortened form 'd.

I would be sad if you left.

If you asked him, he'd help you.

- You use the conditional for:

- asking for something formally and politely, especially in shops
I'd like a kilo of pears, please.
- saying what you would like
I'd like to go to the United States.
- making a suggestion
I could come and pick you up.
- giving advice
You should say you're sorry.

Tip

There is no direct French translation of *would* in verb forms like *would be*, *would like*, *would help* and so on. You change the French verb ending instead.

2 Forming the conditional

- To form the conditional in French, you have to use:
- the infinitive of **-er** and **-ir** verbs, for example, **donner**-, **finir**-
 - the infinitive without the final **e** of **-re** verbs, for example, **attendr**-
- Then add the correct ending to the stem, depending on whether you are talking about **je**, **tu**, **il**, **elle**, **on**, **nous**, **vous**, **ils** or **elles**. The endings are the same for all verbs. In fact, they are the same as the **-er** and **-re** endings for the **IMPERFECT TENSE**, but the stem is the same as the **FUTURE TENSE**.

➡ For more information on the *Imperfect tense* and the *Future tense*, see pages 92 and 98.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to stem, e.g. donner-, finir-, attendr-	Meanings
je (j')	-ais	je donnerais je finirais j'attendrais	I would give I would finish I would wait
tu	-ais	tu donnerais tu finirais tu attendrais	you would give you would finish you would wait
il elle on	-ait	il/elle/on donnerait il/elle/on finirait il/elle/on attendrait	he/she/it/one would give he/she/it/one would finish he/she/it/one would wait
nous	-ions	nous donnerions nous finirions nous attendrions	we would give we would finish we would wait
vous	-iez	vous donneriez vous finiriez vous attendriez	you would give you would finish you would wait
ils elles	-aient	ils/elles donneraient ils/elles finiraient ils/elles attendraient	they would give they would finish they would wait

J'aimerais aller aux États Unis. I'd like to go to the United States.

Tip

je changes to **j'** in front of a word starting with a vowel, most words starting with **h**, and the French word **y**.

- [7]** Note that you have to be careful not to mix up the future tense and the conditional. They look very similar.

FUTURE

je donnerai

je finirai

j'attendrai

j'aimerai

je voudrai

je viendrai

je serai

CONDITIONAL

je donnerais

je finirais

j'attendrais

j'aimerais

je voudrais

je viendrais

je serais

3 Spelling changes in -er verbs

- As with the future tense, a few **-er** verbs change their spellings slightly in the conditional. The forms with spelling changes have been underlined in the tables below.
- With verbs such as **appeler** (meaning *to call*), which end in **-eler**, the **l** doubles throughout the conditional. The double consonant (**ll**) affects the pronunciation of the word. In **appeler**, the first **e** sounds like the vowel sound at the end of the English word *teacher*, but in **appellerais** the first **e** sounds like the one in the English word *pet*.

Pronoun	Example verb: appeler
j'	<u>appellerais</u>
tu	<u>appellerais</u>
il elle on	<u>appellerait</u>
nous	<u>appellerions</u>
vous	<u>appelleriez</u>
ils elles	<u>appelleraient</u>

- The exceptions to this rule are **geler** (meaning *to freeze*) and **peler** (meaning *to peel*), which change in the same way as **lever** (see page 108).
- With verbs such as **jeter** (meaning *to throw*), which end in **-eter**, the **t** doubles throughout the conditional. The double consonant (**tt**) affects the pronunciation of the word. In **jeter**, the first **e** sounds like the vowel sound at the end of the English word *teacher*, but in **jetterais** the first **e** sounds like the one in the English word *pet*.

Pronoun	Example verb: jeter
je	<u>jetterais</u>
tu	<u>jetterais</u>
il elle on	<u>jetterait</u>
nous	<u>jetterions</u>
vous	<u>jetteriez</u>
ils elles	<u>jetteraient</u>

- The exceptions to this rule include **acheter** (meaning *to buy*), which changes in the same way as **lever** (see page 108).

- With verbs such as **nettoyer** (meaning *to clean*), that end in **-yer**, the **y** changes to **i** throughout the conditional.

Pronoun	Example verb: nettoyer
je	nettoierais
tu	nettoierais
il elle on	nettoierait
nous	nettoierions
vous	nettoieriez
ils elles	nettoieraient

- Verbs ending in **-ayer**, such as **payer** (meaning *to pay*) and **essayer** (meaning *to try*), can be spelled with either a **y** or an **i**. So **je paierais** and **je payerais**, for example, are both correct.
- With verbs such as **lever** (meaning *to raise*), **peser** (meaning *to weigh*) and **acheter** (meaning *to buy*), **e** changes to **è** throughout the conditional. In **lever** the first **e** sounds like the vowel sound at the end of the English word *teacher*, but in **lèverais** and so on the first **e** sounds like the one in the English word *pet*.

Pronoun	Example verb: lever
je	lèverais
tu	lèverais
il elle on	lèverait
nous	lèverions
vous	lèveriez
ils elles	lèveraient

4 Reflexive verbs in the conditional

- The conditional of reflexive verbs is formed in just the same way as for ordinary verbs, except that you have to remember to give the reflexive pronoun (**me**, **te**, **se**, **nous**, **vous**, **se**).

Subject pronoun	Reflexive pronoun	Example with laver	Meaning
je	me (m')	laverais	I would wash
tu	te (t')	laverais	you would wash
il elle on	se (s')	laverait	he/she/it would wash
nous	nous	laverions	we would wash
vous	vous	laveriez	you would wash
ils elles	se (s')	laveraient	they would wash

Tip

me changes to **m'**, **te** to **t'** and **se** to **s'** before a vowel, most words starting with **h** and the French word **y**.

5 Irregular verbs in the conditional

- The same verbs that are irregular in the future tense are irregular in the conditional, including: **avoir**, **être**, **faire**, **aller**, **devoir**, **pouvoir**, **savoir**, **tenir**, **venir**, **voir**, **vouloir**.

⇒ For more information on *Irregular verbs in the future tense*, see page 102.

- To form the conditional of an irregular verb, use the same stem as for the future tense, for example:

avoir → **aur-**

être → **ser-**

► Then add the usual endings for the conditional.

Infinitive	Future stem	Conditional endings	Conditional form
avoir	aur-	-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient	j' <u>aurais</u> , tu <u>aurais</u> , il/elle/on <u>aurait</u> , nous <u>aurions</u> , vous <u>auriez</u> , ils/elles <u>auraient</u>
être	ser-	-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient	je <u>serais</u> , tu <u>serais</u> , il/elle/on <u>serait</u> , nous <u>serions</u> , vous <u>seriez</u> , ils/elles <u>seraient</u>
faire	fer-	-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient	je <u>ferais</u> , tu <u>ferais</u> , il/elle/on <u>ferait</u> , nous <u>ferions</u> , vous <u>feriez</u> , ils/elles <u>feraient</u>
aller	ir-	-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient	j' <u>irais</u> , tu <u>irais</u> , il/elle/on <u>irait</u> , nous <u>irions</u> , vous <u>iriez</u> , ils/elles <u>iraient</u>

J'irais si j'avais le temps.

Je voudrais un kilo de poires, s'il vous plaît.

Tu devrais t'excuser.

I would go if I had time.

I'd like a kilo of pears, please.

You should say you're sorry.

Key points

- ✓ The conditional endings are the same for **-er**, **-ir** and **-re** verbs: **-ais, -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient**.
- ✓ The conditional endings are the same as the endings for the imperfect tense of **-er** and **-re** verbs, but the stem is the same as the stem of the future tense.
- ✓ In verbs ending in **-eler** and **-eter**:
l → ll and t → tt throughout the conditional.
- ✓ In verbs ending in **-yer**:
y → i throughout the conditional (optional in **-ayer** verbs).
- ✓ The same verbs that are irregular in the future are irregular in the conditional. It is worth learning these in full.

The perfect tense

What is the perfect tense?

The **perfect** is one of the verb tenses used to talk about the past, especially about actions that took place and were completed in the past.

1 Using the perfect tense

► You can often recognize a perfect tense in English by a form like *I gave*, *I have finished*.

I gave her my phone number.

I have finished my soup.

Tip

The perfect tense is the tense you will need most to talk about things that have happened or were true in the past. It is used to talk about actions that took place and **WERE COMPLETED** in the past. Use the **imperfect tense** for regular events and in most descriptions.

➡ For more information on the **Imperfect tense**, see page 92.

2 Forming the perfect tense

► The imperfect, future and conditional tenses in French are made up of just **one** word, for example, **je donne**, **tu finissais** or **il attendra**. The perfect tense has **TWO** parts to it:

- the **present** tense of the verb **avoir** (meaning *to have*) or **être** (meaning *to be*)
- a part of the main verb called the **past participle**, like *given*, *finished* and *done* in English

► In other words, the perfect tense in French is like the form *I have done* in English.

➡ For more information on forming the present tense of **avoir** and **être**, see page 82.

3 Forming the past participle

► To form the past participle of regular verbs, you use the **infinitive** of the verb:

- For **-er** verbs, you replace the **-er** at the end of the infinitive with **é**.

Infinitive	Take off -er	Add -é
donner (to give)	donn-	donné
tomber (to fall)	tomb-	tombé

- For **-ir** verbs, you replace the **-ir** at the end of the infinitive with **-i**.

Infinitive	Take off -ir	Add -i
finir (to finish)	fin-	fini
partir (to leave, to go)	part-	parti

- For **-re** verbs, you replace the **-re** at the end of the infinitive with **-u**.

Infinitive	Take off -re	Add -u
attendre (to wait)	attend-	attendu
descendre (to go down, to come down, to get off)	descend-	descendu

4 Verbs that form their perfect tense with **avoir**

- Most verbs form their perfect tense with **avoir**, for example **donner**:

Pronoun	avoir	Past participle	Meaning
j'	ai	donné	I gave I have given
tu	as	donné	you gave you have given
il elle on	a	donné	he/she/it/one gave he/she/it/one has given
nous	avons	donné	we gave we have given
vous	avez	donné	you gave you have given
ils elles	ont	donné	they gave they have given

Elle a donné son numéro de téléphone à Claude.

She gave Claude her phone number.

Il a acheté un ordinateur.

He's bought a computer.

Je n'ai pas regardé la télé hier.

I didn't watch TV yesterday.

TIP

je changes to **j'** in front of a word starting with a vowel, most words starting with **h**, and the French word **y**.

- The perfect tense of **-ir** verbs like **finir** is formed in the same way, except for the past participle: **j'ai fini**, **tu as fini** and so on.
- The perfect tense of **-re** verbs like **attendre** is formed in the same way, except for the past participle: **j'ai attendu**, **tu as attendu** and so on.

5 avoir or être?

- **MOST** verbs form their perfect tense with **avoir**; these include **donner** as shown on page 112.
- There are two main groups of verbs which form their perfect tense with **être** instead of **avoir**:
 - all reflexive verbs

► For more information on **Reflexive verbs**, see page 88.

- a group of verbs that are mainly used to talk about movement or a change of some kind, including these ones:

aller	to go
venir	to come
arriver	to arrive, to happen
partir	to leave, to go
descendre	to go down, to come down, to get off
monter	to go up, to come up
entrer	to go in, to come in
sortir	to go out, to come out
mourir	to die
naître	to be born
devenir	to become
rester	to stay
tomber	to fall

Je suis allé au match de football hier.

I went to the football match yesterday.

Il est sorti acheter un journal.

He's gone out to buy a newspaper.

Vous êtes descendu à quelle station?

Which station did you get off at?

Grammar Extra!

Some of the verbs on the previous page take **avoir** when they are used with a direct object, for example:

descendre quelque chose

to get something down, to bring something down, to take something down

monter quelque chose

to go up something, to come up something

sortir quelque chose

to take something out

Est-ce que tu as descendu les bagages?

Did you bring the bags down?

Elle a monté les escaliers.

She went up the stairs.

Elle a sorti son porte-monnaie de son sac.

She took her purse out of her handbag.

➞ For more information on **Direct objects**, see page 47.

6 Verbs that form their perfect tense with **être**

- When a verb takes **être**, the past participle **ALWAYS** agrees with the subject of the verb; that is, the endings change in the feminine and plural forms.

	Masculine endings	Examples	Feminine endings	Examples
Singular	-	tombé parti descendu	-e	tombée partie descendue
Plural	-s	tombés partis descendus	-es	tombées parties descendues

Est-ce ton frère est allé à l'étranger?

Did your brother go abroad?

Elle est venue avec nous.

She came with us.

Ils sont partis à six heures.

They left at six o'clock.

Mes cousines sont arrivées hier.

My cousins arrived yesterday.
(The cousins are female.)

- Here are the perfect tense forms of **tomber** in full:

Pronoun	avoir	Past participle	Meaning
je	suis	tombé (masculine) tombée (feminine)	I fell/I have fallen
tu	es	tombé (masculine) tombée (feminine)	you fell/you have fallen
il	est	tombé	he/it fell, he/it has fallen
elle	est	tombée	she/it fell, she/it has fallen
on	est	tombé (singular) tombés (masculine plural) tombées (feminine plural)	one fell/one has fallen, we fell/we have fallen
nous	sommes	tombés (masculine) tombées (feminine)	we fell/we have fallen
vous	êtes	tombé (masculine singular) tombée (feminine singular) tombés (masculine plural) tombées (feminine plural)	you fell/you have fallen
ils	sont	tombés	they fell/they have fallen
elles	sont	tombées	they fell/they have fallen

Grammar Extra!

When **on** means we, the past participle can agree with the subject of the sentence, but it is optional.

On est arrivés en retard.

We arrived late. (masculine)

On est rentrées toutes les deux à la même heure.

We both came in at the same time.
(feminine)

- The perfect tense of **-ir** verbs like **partir** is formed in the same way, except for the past participle: **je suis parti(e)**, **tu es parti(e)** and so on.
- The perfect tense of **-re** verbs like **descendre** is formed in the same way, except for the past participle: **je suis descendu(e)**, **tu es descendu(e)** and so on.

Grammar Extra!

When a verb takes **avoir**, the past participle usually stays in the masculine singular form, as shown in the table for **donner**, and does not change for the feminine or plural forms.

Il a fini sa dissertation.

He's finished his essay.

Elles ont fini leur dissertation.

They've finished their essay.

In one particular case, however, the past participle of verbs with **avoir** does change in the feminine and plural forms. In the sentences above, **dissertation** is the direct object of the verb **finir**. When the direct object comes **AFTER** the verb, as it does in the examples above, then the past participle doesn't change. If the direct object comes **BEFORE** the verb, however, the past participle has to change to agree with that direct object.

la dissertation qu'il a finie hier

the essay that he finished yesterday

la dissertation qu'elles ont finie hier

the essay that they finished yesterday

Since object pronouns usually come **BEFORE** the verb, the past participle changes to agree with the pronoun.

Il a bu son thé? – Oui, il l'a bu.

Did he drink his tea? – Yes, he's drunk it.

Il a bu sa limonade? – Oui, il l'a bu.

Did he drink his lemonade? – Yes, he's drunk it.

Tip

Remember that with verbs taking **être**, it is the **subject** of the verb that tells you what ending to add to the past participle. Compare this with the rule for verbs taking **avoir** that have a direct object; in their case, it is the **direct object** coming before the verb that tells you what ending to add to the past participle.

7 The perfect tense of reflexive verbs

- Here is the perfect tense of the reflexive verb **se laver** (meaning *to wash (oneself)*, *to have a wash*, *to get washed*) in full. Remember that all reflexive verbs take **être**, and so the past participle of reflexive verbs usually agrees with the subject of the sentence.

Subject pronoun	Reflexive pronoun	Present tense of être	Past participle	Meaning
je	me	suis	lavé (masculine) lavée (feminine)	I washed myself
tu	t'	es	lavé (masculine) lavée (feminine)	you washed yourself
il	s'	est	lavé	he washed himself one washed oneself
elle	s'	est	lavée	she washed herself
on	s'	est	lavé (singular) lavés (masculine plural) lavées (feminine plural)	one washed oneself we washed ourselves
nous	nous	sommes	lavés (masculine) lavées (feminine)	we washed ourselves
vous	vous	êtes	lavé (masculine singular) lavée (feminine singular) lavés (masculine plural) lavées (feminine plural)	you washed yourself (singular) you washed yourselves (plural)
ils	se	sont	lavés	they washed themselves
elles	se	sont	lavées	they washed themselves

Tip

When **on** means *we*, the past participle can agree with the subject of the sentence, but it is optional.

On s'est lavées l'une après l'autre.

We washed ourselves one after the other. (feminine)

Grammar Extra!

The past participle of reflexive verbs **DOES NOT** change if the direct object (**la jambe** in the example below) **FOLLOWS** the verb.

Elle s'est cassé la jambe.

She's broken her leg.

8 Irregular verbs in the perfect tense

► Some past participles are irregular. There aren't too many, so try to learn them.

avoir (meaning <i>to have</i>)	→ eu
devoir (meaning <i>to have to, must</i>)	→ dû
dire (meaning <i>to say, to tell</i>)	→ dit
être (meaning <i>to be</i>)	→ été
faire (meaning <i>to do, to make</i>)	→ fait
mettre (meaning <i>to put</i>)	→ mis
pouvoir (meaning <i>to be able to, can</i>)	→ pu
prendre (meaning <i>to take</i>)	→ pris
savoir (meaning <i>to know</i>)	→ su
tenir (meaning <i>to hold</i>)	→ tenu
venir (meaning <i>to come</i>)	→ venu
voir (meaning <i>to see</i>)	→ vu
vouloir (meaning <i>to want</i>)	→ voulu

► **il pleut** becomes **il a plu** (*it rained*).

► **il faut** becomes **il a fallu** (*it was necessary*).

Key points

- ✓ The perfect tense describes things that happened and were completed in the past. It is not used for things that happened regularly or in descriptions.
- ✓ The perfect tense is formed with the present tense of **avoir** or **être** and a past participle.
- ✓ Most verbs take **avoir** in the perfect tense. All reflexive verbs and a small group of verbs referring to movement or change take **être**.
- ✓ The past participle ends in **-é** for **-er** verbs, in **-i** for **-ir** verbs, and in **-u** for **-re** verbs.
- ✓ With verbs that take **avoir**, the past participle does not usually change. With verbs that take **être**, including reflexive verbs, the past participle changes in the feminine and plural.

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

Grammar Extra!

The pluperfect tense

What is the pluperfect tense?

The **pluperfect** is a verb tense which describes something that **had** happened or **had** been true at a point in the past, for example, *I'd forgotten to finish my homework*.

1 Using the pluperfect tense

► You can often recognize a pluperfect tense in English by a form like *I had arrived*, *you'd fallen*.

Elle avait essayé des douzaines de pulls. She **had tried on** dozens of jumpers.

Nous avions déjà commencé à manger quand il est arrivé. We'd already **started** eating when he arrived.

J'étais arrivée la première. I **had arrived** first.

Mes parents s'étaient couchés tôt. My parents **had gone** to bed early.

2 Forming the pluperfect tense

► Like the perfect tense, the pluperfect tense in French has **two** parts to it:

- the **imperfect** tense of the verb **avoir** (meaning *to have*) or **être** (meaning *to be*)
- the past participle

► If a verb takes **avoir** in the perfect tense, then it will take **avoir** in the pluperfect too. If a verb takes **être** in the perfect, then it will take **être** in the pluperfect too.

➡ For more information on the **Imperfect tense** and the **Perfect tense**, see pages 92 and 111.

3 Verbs taking avoir

► Here are the pluperfect tense forms of **donner** (meaning *to give*) in full.

Pronoun	avoir	Past participle	Meaning
j'	avais	donné	I had given
tu	avais	donné	you had given
il elle on	avait	donné	he/she/it/one had given
nous	avions	donné	we had given
vous	aviez	donné	you had given
ils elles	avaient	donné	they had given

► The pluperfect tense of **-ir** verbs like **finir** (meaning *to finish*) is formed in the same way, except for the past participle: **j'avais fini, tu avais fini** and so on.

► The pluperfect tense of **-re** verbs like **attendre** (meaning *to wait*) is formed in the same way, except for the past participle: **j'avais attendu, tu avais attendu** and so on.

4 Verbs taking être

- Here are the pluperfect tense forms of **tomber** (meaning *to fall*) in full. When a verb takes **être** in the pluperfect tense, the past participle always agrees with the subject of the verb; that is, the endings change in the feminine and plural forms.

Pronoun	être	Past participle	Meaning
j'	étais	tombé (masculine) tombée (feminine)	I had fallen
tu	étais	tombé (masculine) tombée (feminine)	you had fallen
il	était	tombé	he/it had fallen
elle	était	tombée	she/it had fallen
on	était	tombé (singular) tombés (masculine plural) tombées (feminine plural)	one had fallen we had fallen
nous	étions	tombés (masculine) tombées (feminine)	we had fallen
vous	étiez	tombé (masculine singular) tombée (feminine singular) tombés (masculine plural) tombées (feminine plural)	you had fallen
ils	étaient	tombés	they had fallen
elles	étaient	tombées	they had fallen

- The pluperfect tense of **-ir** verbs like **partir** (meaning *to leave, to go*) is formed in the same way, except for the past participle: **j'étais parti(e), tu étais parti(e)** and so on.
- The pluperfect tense of **-re** verbs like **descendre** (meaning *to come down, to go down, to get off*) is formed in the same way, except for the past participle: **j'étais descendu(e), tu étais descendu(e)** and so on.

Tip

When **on** means *we*, the past participle can agree with the subject of the sentence, but it is optional.

On était tombées.

We had fallen. (feminine)

5 Reflexive verbs in the pluperfect tense

- Reflexive verbs in the pluperfect tense are formed in the same way as in the perfect tense, but with the imperfect tense of the verb **être** (see page 97).

➡ For more information on the *Perfect tense of reflexive verbs*, see page 117.

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

6 Irregular verbs in the pluperfect tense

- Irregular past participles are the same as for the perfect tense (see page 118).

Key points

- ✓ The pluperfect tense describes things that had happened or were true at a point in the past before something else happened.
- ✓ It is formed with the imperfect tense of **avoir** or **être** and the past participle.
- ✓ The rules for agreement of the past participle are the same as for the perfect tense.

The passive

What is the passive?

The **passive** is a form of the verb that is used when the subject of the verb is the person or thing that is affected by the action, for example, *I was given, we were told, it had been made.*

1 Using the passive

- In a normal, or *active* sentence, the 'subject' of the verb is the person or thing that carries out the action described by the verb. The 'object' of the verb is the person or thing that the verb 'happens' to.

Ryan (*subject*) hit (*active verb*) me (*object*).

- In English, as in French, you can turn an active sentence round to make a passive sentence.

I (*subject*) was hit (*passive verb*) by Ryan (*agent*).

- Very often, however, you cannot identify who is carrying out the action indicated by the verb.

I was hit in the face.

The trees will be chopped down.

I've been chosen to represent the school.

Tip

There is a very important difference between French and English in sentences containing an indirect object. In English we can quite easily turn a normal (active) sentence with an indirect object into a passive sentence.

Active

Someone (*subject*) gave (*active verb*) me (*indirect object*) a book (*direct object*).

Passive

I (*subject*) was given (*passive verb*) a book (*direct object*).

In French, an indirect object can **NEVER** become the subject of a passive verb.

- ➡ For more information on **Direct and Indirect objects**, see pages 47 and 49.

2 Forming the passive

- In English we use the verb *to be* with the past participle (*was hit, was given*) to form the passive. In French the passive is formed in exactly the same way, using **être** and the past participle. The past participle agrees with the subject of the passive verb; that is, the endings change in the feminine and plural forms.

Elle est encouragée par ses parents.

She is encouraged by her parents.

Vous êtes tous bien payés.

You are all well paid. ('you' refers to more than one person here)

Les portes ont été fermées.

The doors have been closed.

- ➡ For more information on the **Past participle**, see page 111.

- Here is the present tense of the **-er** verb **aimer** (meaning *to like, to love*) in its passive form.

Pronoun	Present tense of être	Past participle	Meaning
je	suis	aimé (masculine) aimée (feminine)	I am loved
tu	es	aimé (masculine) aimée (feminine)	you are loved
il	est	aimé	he/it is loved
elle	est	aimée	she/it is loved
on	est	aimé (singular) aimés (masculine plural) aimées (feminine plural)	one is loved we are loved
nous	sommes	aimés (masculine) aimées (feminine)	we are loved
vous	êtes	aimé (masculine singular) aimée (feminine singular) aimés (masculine plural) aimées (feminine plural)	you are loved
ils	sont	aimés	they are loved
elles	sont	aimées	they are loved

- The passive of **-ir** verbs is formed in the same way, except that the past participle is different. For example, **elle est remplie** (meaning *it is full*).
- The passive of **-re** verbs is formed in the same way, except that the past participle is different. For example, **il est défendu** (meaning *it is forbidden*).

Grammar Extra!

When **on** means we, the past participle can agree with the subject of the sentence, but it is optional.

On est aimé de tout le monde. We're loved by everyone. (masculine)

- You can form other tenses of the passive by changing the tense of the verb **être**.

Imperfect: **j'étais aimé(e)** I was loved

Future: **tu seras aimé(e)** you will be loved

Perfect: **il a été aimé** he has been loved

- ⇒ For more information on the **Imperfect, future and perfect tenses**, see pages 92, 98 and 111.

- Irregular past participles are the same as for the perfect tense (see page 118).

3 Avoiding the passive

- Passives are not as common in French as in English. There are two main ways that French speakers express the same idea.

- by using the pronoun **on** (meaning *someone* or *they*) with a normal, active verb

On leur a envoyé une lettre. They were sent a letter. (literally: Someone sent them a letter.)

On m'a dit que tu ne venais pas. I was told that you weren't coming. (literally: They told me you weren't coming.)

- ⇒ For more information on **Pronouns**, see page 42.

- by using a reflexive verb

Les melons se vendent 2 euros la pièce. Melons are sold for 2 euros each.

- ⇒ For more information on **Reflexive verbs**, see page 88.

Key points

- ✓ The present tense of the passive is formed by using the present tense of **être** with the past participle.
- ✓ The past participle always agrees with the subject of the passive verb.
- ✓ You can sometimes avoid a passive construction by using a reflexive verb or the pronoun **on**.

Grammar Extra!

The present participle

What is a present participle?

The **present participle** is a verb form ending in *-ing* which is used in English to form verb tenses, and which may be used as an adjective and a noun, for example, *What are you doing?*; *the setting sun*; *Swimming is easy!*

1 Using the present participle

- Present participles are not as common in French as in English, because they are not used to form tenses. The main uses of the present participle in French are:

- as a verb, on its own, corresponding to the English *-ing* form. It **DOES NOT** agree with the subject of the verb when it is used in this way.

Habitant près de Paris, je vais assez souvent en ville.

Living close to Paris, I go into town quite often.

Ils m'ont suivi, criant mon nom.

They followed me, shouting my name.

- as a verb, after the preposition **en**. The present participle **DOES NOT** agree with the subject of the verb when it is used in this way. The subject of the two parts of the sentence is always the same. **en** can be translated in a number of different ways.

En attendant sa sœur, Richard s'est endormi.

While waiting for his sister, Richard fell asleep.

Appelle-nous en arrivant chez toi.

Call us when you get home.

En appuyant sur ce bouton, on peut imprimer ses documents.

By pressing this button, you can print your documents.

Il s'est blessé en essayant de sauver un chat.

He hurt himself trying to rescue a cat.

- ⇒ For more information on the preposition **en**, see page 168.

- as an adjective, like in English. As with all adjectives in French, the ending **DOES** change in the feminine and plural forms.

le soleil couchant

the setting sun

l'année suivante

the following year

Ces enfants sont énervants.

Those children are annoying.

des chaises pliantes

folding chairs

Tip

The French present participle is **NEVER** used to translate English verb forms like *I was walking, we are leaving*.

➔ For more information on the **Imperfect tense** and the **Present tense**, see pages 92 and 111.

- English verbs describing movement that are followed by an adverb such as *out* or *down*, or a preposition such as *across* or *up* are often translated by a verb + **en** + present participle.

Il est sorti en courant.

He ran out. (*literally: He came out running.*)

J'ai traversé la rue en boitant.

I limped across the street. (*literally: I crossed the street limping.*)

2 Forming the present participle

- To form the present participle of regular **-er**, **-ir** and **-re** verbs, you use the **nous** form of the present tense and replace the **-ons** ending with **-ant**.

nous form of present tense	Take off -ons	Add -ant
donnons	donn-	donnant
lançons	lanç-	lançant
mangeons	mange-	mangeant
finissons	finiss-	finissant
partons	part-	partant
attendons	attend-	attendant
descendons	descend-	descendant

3 Irregular verbs

- Three verbs have an irregular present participle:

avoir (meaning *to have*) → **ayant**

être (meaning *to be*) → **étant**

savoir (meaning *to know*) → **sachant**

Key points

- ✓ Present participles are never used to form tenses in French, but they can be used as verbs, either on their own or after **en**.
- ✓ They can also be used as adjectives, in which case they agree with the noun they describe.
- ✓ They are formed by taking the **nous** form of the present tense and replacing the **-ons** ending with **-ant**. The exceptions are **avoir**, **être** and **savoir**.

Impersonal verbs

What is an impersonal verb?

An **impersonal verb** is one that does not refer to a real person or thing and where the subject is represented by *it*, for example, *It's going to rain; It's ten o'clock*.

- **Impersonal verbs** are only used with **il** (meaning *it*) and in the infinitive. They are called impersonal verbs because **il** does not really refer to a real person, animal or thing, just like *it* and *there* in English in the examples below.

Il pleut.

It's raining.

Il va pleuvoir.

It's going to rain.

Il y a un problème.

There's a problem.

Il pourrait y avoir un problème.

There could be a problem.

- There are also some very common verbs that can be used in this way in addition to their normal meanings, for example, **avoir**, **être** and **faire**.

Infinitive	Expression	Meaning
avoir + noun	il y a	there is (<i>singular</i>) there are (<i>plural</i>)
être + time	il est	it is
faire + noun	il fait jour il fait nuit	it's daylight it's dark
falloir + noun	il faut	we/you <i>etc.</i> need it takes
falloir + infinitive	il faut	we/you <i>etc.</i> have to
manquer	il manque	there is ... missing (<i>singular</i>) there are ... missing (<i>plural</i>)
paraître	il paraît que	it appears that it seems that
rester + noun	il reste	there is ... left (<i>singular</i>) there are ... left (<i>plural</i>)
sembler	il semble que	it appears that it seems that
valoir mieux + infinitive	il vaut mieux	it would be better to

Il y a quelqu'un à la porte.

There's somebody at the door.

Il est deux heures.

It's two o'clock.

Il faut partir.

I've/We've *etc.* got to go.

Il manque cent euros.

100 euros are missing.

Il reste du pain.

There's some bread left.

Il vaut mieux ne rien dire.

It would be better to say nothing.

- Several impersonal verbs relate to the weather.

Infinitive	Expression	Meaning
faire + adjective	il fait beau il fait mauvais	the weather's lovely the weather's bad
faire + noun	il fait du vent il fait du soleil	it's windy it's sunny
geler	il gèle	it's freezing
neiger	il neige	it's snowing
pleuvoir	il pleut	it's raining

Grammar Extra!

There is another group of useful expressions that start with an impersonal **il**. These are followed by a form of the verb called the subjunctive.

il faut que	
il faut que je parte.	I've got to go.
il est nécessaire que	
il est nécessaire qu'on le fasse.	We have to do it.
il est possible que	
il est possible qu'il vienne.	He might come.
il est dommage que	
il est dommage que tu ne l'aies pas vu.	It's a shame you didn't see him.

➡ For more information on the *Subjunctive*, see page 129.

Key points

- ✓ Impersonal verbs can only be used in the infinitive and the **il** form.
- ✓ **il faut**, **il y a**, **il est** and **il fait** with expressions relating to the weather are very common.

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

Grammar Extra!

The subjunctive

What is the subjunctive?

The **subjunctive** is a verb form that is used in certain circumstances to express some sort of feeling, or to show there is doubt about whether something will happen or whether something is true. It is only used occasionally in modern English, for example, *If I were you, I wouldn't bother.*; *So be it.*

1 Using the subjunctive

- In French the subjunctive is used after certain verbs and conjunctions when two parts of a sentence have different subjects.

I'm afraid **he** won't come back.

(The subject of the first part of the sentence is 'I'; the subject of the second part of the sentence is 'he'.)

- Sometimes, in a sentence like *We want her to be happy*, you use the infinitive of the verb in English (*to be*). This is **NOT** possible in French when there is a different subject in the two parts of the sentence (*we* and *her*). You have to use a subjunctive for the second verb.

Nous voulons être heureux. We want to be happy.

(No change of subject, so you can just use an infinitive – **être** – in French.)

Nous voulons qu'elle soit heureuse. We want her to be happy.

(Subject changes from **nous** to **elle**, so you have to use a subjunctive – **soit** – in French.)

- You can only use the infinitive instead of the subjunctive in French with impersonal verbs.

Il faut que tu viennes à l'heure.

(using subjunctive)

You have to come on time.

→ **Il faut venir à l'heure.**

(using infinitive)

Il vaut mieux que tu restes chez toi.

(using subjunctive)

It's better that you stay at home.

→ **Il vaut mieux rester chez toi.**

(using infinitive)

2 Coming across the subjunctive

- The subjunctive has several tenses but you are only likely to come across the present subjunctive occasionally in your reading.
- You may see a subjunctive after certain verbs that you use when you are:
- wishing something: **vouloir que** and **désirer que** (meaning *to wish that*, *to want*), **aimer que** (meaning *to like that*), **aimer mieux que** and **préférer que** (meaning *to prefer that*)
 - fearing something: **avoir peur que** (meaning *to be afraid that*)
 - giving your opinion: **croire que** (meaning *to think that*)

- saying how you feel: **regretter que** (meaning *to be sorry that*), **être content que** (meaning *to be pleased that*), **être surpris que** (meaning *to be surprised that*) and so on

Je suis content que vous les I'm pleased you like them.

aimiez.

J'ai peur qu'il ne revienne pas. I'm afraid he won't come back.

- You may see a subjunctive after certain verbal expressions starting with **il**, such as **il faut que** (meaning *it is necessary that*) and **il vaut mieux que** (meaning *it is better that*).

Il faut que je vous parle. I need to speak to you.

⇒ For a list of some expressions requiring the subjunctive, see page 128.

3 Forming the present subjunctive of -er verbs

- To form the stem of the present subjunctive you take the infinitive and chop off **-er**, just as for the present tense. Then you add the correct ending, depending on whether you are referring to **je, tu, il, elle, on, nous, vous, ils** or **elles**.
- For **-er** verbs the endings are the same as for the ordinary present tense, apart from the **nous** and **vous** forms, which have an extra **i**, as in the imperfect tense.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to stem, e.g. donn-	Meanings
je (j')	-e	je donne	I give
tu	-es	tu donnes	you give
il elle on	-e	il donne elle donne on donne	he/she/it/one gives
nous	-ions	nous donnions	we give
vous	-iez	vous donniez	you give
ils elles	-ent	ils donnent elles donnent	they give

Tip

je changes to **j'** in front of a word starting with a vowel, most words starting with **h**, and the French word **y**.

4 Forming the present subjunctive of -ir verbs

- To form the stem of the present subjunctive you take the infinitive and chop off **-ir**, just as for the present tense. Then you add the correct ending, depending on whether you are referring to **je, tu, il, elle, on, nous, vous, ils** or **elles**.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to stem, e.g. fin-	Meanings
je (j')	-isse	je finisse	I finish
tu	-isses	tu finisses	you finish
il elle on	-isse	il finisse elle finisse on finisse	he/she/it/one finishes
nous	-issions	nous finissions	we finish
vous	-issiez	vous finissiez	you finish
ils elles	-issent	ils finissent elles finissent	they finish

Tip

je changes to **j'** in front of a word starting with a vowel, most words starting with **h**, and the French word **y**.

5 Forming the present subjunctive of -re verbs

- To form the stem of the present subjunctive you take the infinitive and chop off **-re**, just as for the present tense. Then you add the correct ending, depending on whether you are referring to **je, tu, il, elle, on, nous, vous, ils** or **elles**.

Pronoun	Ending	Add to stem, e.g. attend-	Meanings
je (j')	-e	j'attende	I wait
tu	-es	tu attends	you wait
il elle on	-e	il attende elle attende on attende	he/she/it/one waits
nous	-ions	nous attendions	we wait
vous	-iez	vous attendiez	you wait
ils elles	-ent	ils attendent elles attendent	they wait

Tip

je changes to **j'** in front of a word starting with a vowel, most words starting with **h**, and the French word **y**.

6 Irregular verbs in the subjunctive

► Some important verbs have irregular subjunctive forms.

Verb	Meaning	je (j')	tu	il/elle/on	nous	vous	ils/elles
aller	to go	aille	ailles	aille	allions	alliez	aillent
avoir	to have	aie	aies	ait	ayons	ayez	aient
devoir	to have to, must	doive	doives	doive	devions	deviez	doivent
dire	to say, to tell	dise	dises	dise	disions	disiez	disent
être	to be	sois	sois	soit	soyons	soyez	soient
faire	to do, to make	fasse	fasses	fasse	fassions	fassiez	fassent
pouvoir	to be able to, can	puisse	puisses	puisse	puissions	puissiez	puissent
prendre	to take	prenne	prennes	prenne	prenions	preniez	prennent
(apprendre and comprendre also behave like this – j'apprenne, tu apprennes and so on)							
savoir	to know	sache	saches	sache	sachions	sachiez	sachent
venir	to come	vienne	viennes	vienne	venions	veniez	viennent
vouloir	to want to	veuille	veuilles	veuille	voulions	vouliez	veuillent

Key points

- ✓ After certain verbs you have to use a subjunctive in French when there is a different subject in the two clauses. These verbs mostly relate to wishing, fearing, and saying what you think, what you feel and that you are uncertain. A subjunctive is also found after certain verbal expressions that start with **il**.
- ✓ The stem of the present tense subjunctive is the same as the stem used for the ordinary present tense.
- ✓ The present tense subjunctive endings for **-er** and **-re** verbs are: **-e, -es, -e, -ions, -iez and -ent**.
- ✓ The present tense subjunctive endings for **-ir** verbs are: **-isse, -isses, -isse, -issions, -issiez and -issent**.

Verbs followed by an infinitive

1 Linking two verbs together

► Many verbs in French can be followed by another verb in the infinitive. The infinitive is the form of the verb that is found in the dictionary, such as **donner** (meaning *to give*), **finir** (meaning *to finish*) and **attendre** (meaning *to wait*).

► There are three main ways that verbs can be linked together:

- with no linking word
Vous voulez attendre? Would you like to wait?
- with the preposition **à**
J'apprends à nager. I'm learning to swim.
- with the preposition **de**
Essayez de venir. Try to come.

➡ For more information on *Prepositions after adjectives*, and on *Prepositions after verbs*, see pages 183 and 178.

2 Verbs followed by an infinitive with no preposition

► A number of verbs and groups of verbs can be followed by an infinitive with no preposition. The following important group of verbs are all very irregular, but they crop up so frequently that they are worth learning in full:

- **devoir** (*to have to, must, to be due to*)
Tu dois être fatiguée. You must be tired.
Elle doit partir. She has to leave.
Le nouveau centre commercial doit ouvrir en mai. The new shopping centre is due to open in May.
- **pouvoir** (*can, may*)
Je peux t'aider, si tu veux. I can help you, if you like.
Puis-je venir vous voir samedi? May I come and see you on Saturday?
- **savoir** (*to know how to, can*)
Tu sais conduire? Can you drive?
Je sais faire les omelettes. I know how to make omelettes.
- **vouloir** (*to want*)
Élise veut rester un jour de plus. Élise wants to stay one more day.
Ma voiture ne veut pas démarrer. My car won't start.
Voulez-vous boire quelque chose? Would you like something to drink?
Je voudrais acheter un ordinateur. I'd like to buy a computer.

- **falloir** (meaning *to be necessary*) and **valoir mieux** (meaning *to be better*) are only used in the infinitive and with **il**.

Il faut prendre une décision. We/you etc. have to make a decision.

Il vaut mieux téléphoner avant. It's better to ring first.

⇒ For more information on **Impersonal verbs**, see page 127.

- The following common verbs can also be followed by an infinitive without a preposition:

adorer	to love
aimer	to like, to love
aimer mieux	to prefer
désirer	to want
détester	to hate
envoyer	to send
espérer	to hope
faire	to make, to have something done (<i>that is, faire faire quelque chose</i>)
laisser	to let
préférer	to prefer
sembler	to seem

J'espère te voir la semaine prochaine. I hope to see you next week.

Ne me fais pas rire! Don't make me laugh!

J'ai fait réparer mes chaussures. I've had my shoes mended.

Je préfère manger à la cantine. I prefer to eat in the canteen.

- Some of these verbs combine with infinitives to make set phrases with a special meaning.

aller chercher quelque chose	to go and get something
laisser tomber quelque chose	to drop something
vouloir dire quelque chose	to mean something

Va chercher ton papa! Go and get your dad!

Paul a laissé tomber le vase. Paul dropped the vase.

Qu'est-ce que ça veut dire? What does that mean?

- Verbs that relate to seeing or hearing, such as **voir** (meaning *to see*), **regarder** (meaning *to watch, to look at*), **écouter** (meaning *to listen to*) and **entendre** (meaning *to hear*) can be followed by an infinitive.

Il nous a vus arriver. He saw us arrive.

On entend chanter les oiseaux. You can hear the birds singing.

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

- Verbs that relate to movement of some kind and do not have a direct object, such as **aller** (meaning *to go*) and **venir** (meaning *to come*), can be followed by an infinitive.

Je vais voir Nicolas ce soir.

I'm going to see Nicolas tonight.

Viens voir!

Come and see!

3 Verbs followed by **à** + infinitive

- There are some common verbs that can be followed by **à** and an infinitive.

s'amuser à faire quelque chose	to have fun doing something
apprendre à faire quelque chose	to learn to do something
commencer à faire quelque chose	to begin to do something
continuer à faire quelque chose	to go on doing something
s'habituer à faire quelque chose	to get used to doing something
J'apprends à skier.	I'm learning to ski.
Il a commencé à pleuvoir.	It began to rain.

- Some verbs can be followed by a person's name or by a noun relating to a person, and then by **à** and an infinitive. Sometimes you need to put **à** in front of the person too.

aider quelqu'un à faire quelque chose	to help someone do something
apprendre à quelqu'un à faire quelque chose	to teach someone to do something
inviter quelqu'un à faire quelque chose	to invite someone to do something

4 Verbs followed by **de** + infinitive

- There are some common verbs that can be followed by **de** and an infinitive.

arrêter de faire quelque chose,	
s'arrêter de faire quelque chose	to stop doing something
commencer de faire quelque chose	to start doing something
continuer de faire quelque chose	to go on doing something
décider de faire quelque chose	to decide to do something
se dépêcher de faire quelque chose	to hurry to do something
essayer de faire quelque chose	to try to do something
s'excuser d'avoir fait quelque chose	to apologize for doing something
finir de faire quelque chose	to finish doing something
oublier de faire quelque chose	to forget to do something
proposer de faire quelque chose	to suggest doing something
refuser de faire quelque chose	to refuse to do something
suggérer de faire quelque chose	to suggest doing something

J'ai décidé de lui écrire.

I decided to write to her.

Je leur ai suggéré de partir de bonne heure.

I suggested that they set off early.

- The following verbs meaning asking or telling are also followed by **de** and an infinitive. Sometimes you need to put **à** in front of the person you are asking or telling.

commander à quelqu'un de faire quelque chose

to order someone to do something

demande à quelqu'un de faire quelque chose

to ask someone to do something

dire à quelqu'un de faire quelque chose

to tell someone to do something

empêcher quelqu'un de faire quelque chose

to prevent someone from doing something

remercier quelqu'un de faire quelque chose

to thank someone for doing something

Grammar Extra!

If it is important to emphasize that something is going on at a particular time, you can use the phrase **être en train de faire quelque chose**.

Il est en train de travailler. Est-ce que vous pouvez rappeler plus tard? He's working. Can you call back later?

If you want to say you have just done something, you can use the phrase **venir de faire quelque chose**. In English you use the **PAST** tense, but in French you use the **PRESENT** tense.

Élisabeth vient de partir. Élisabeth has just left.

Key points

- ✓ Many French verbs can be followed by another verb in the infinitive.
- ✓ The two verbs may be linked by nothing at all, or by the preposition **à** or **de**.
- ✓ The construction in French does not always match the English exactly. It's best to learn these constructions when you learn a new verb.

Other uses of the infinitive

- The infinitive can be used in many other ways:

- after certain adjectives

content de happy to
prêt à ready to

Il est toujours prêt à rendre service.

He's always ready to help.

- after certain prepositions

Pour aller à la gare?

How do you get to the station?

Il est parti sans dire au revoir.

He left without saying goodbye.

- after certain set phrases involving a verb plus a noun

avoir envie de faire quelque chose to feel like doing something

avoir besoin de faire quelque chose to need to do something

avoir peur de faire quelque chose to be frightened of doing something

J'ai besoin de changer de l'argent. I need to change some money.

- in instructions that are aimed at the general public – for example, on signs or in cookery books

Ajouter le sel et le poivre, et bien mélanger. Add the salt and pepper, and mix well.

Conserver au frais. Keep refrigerated.

- as the subject or object of a sentence, when the infinitive corresponds to the **-ing** form in English used as a noun

Fumer n'est pas bon pour la santé. Smoking isn't good for your health.

J'adore lire. I love reading.

Tip

You can use the verb **faire** with an infinitive to refer to something you are having done by someone else.

Je dois faire réparer ma voiture.

I have to get my car repaired.

Key points

- ✓ Infinitives are found after certain adjectives, prepositions and set phrases, and in instructions to the general public.
- ✓ They can also function like nouns, as the subject or object of another verb.

NEGATIVES

What is a negative?

A **negative** question or statement is one which contains a word such as *not*, *never* or *nothing* and is used to say that something is not happening, is not true or is absent.

1 Using negatives

- In English we use words like *not*, *no*, *nothing* and *never* to show a negative.
 - I'm not very pleased.
 - Dan never rang me.
 - Nothing ever happens here!
 - There's no milk left.
- *Not* is often combined with certain English verbs – for example, *can't*, *won't*, *didn't*, *hasn't*.
 - He isn't joking.
 - She didn't say.
- In French, if you want to make something negative, you generally use a pair of words, for example, **ne ... pas** (meaning *not*). The verb goes in the middle.

ne ... pas	not
ne ... rien	nothing, not ... anything
ne ... personne	nobody, no one, not ... anybody, not ... anyone
ne ... jamais	never, not ... ever
ne ... plus	no longer, no more, not ... any longer, not ... any more

Je ne fume pas.	I don't smoke.
Ne changez rien.	Don't change anything.
Je ne vois personne.	I can't see anybody.
Elle n'arrive jamais à l'heure.	She never arrives on time.
Il ne travaille plus ici.	He's no longer working here.

Tip

ne changes to **n'** in front of a word that starts with a vowel, most words beginning with **h** and the French word **y**.

- In English, *did* is often used to make a statement negative.
 - I went to his party. → I didn't go to his party.
 - We saw David at the weekend. → We didn't see David at the weekend.

❗ Note that the French verb **faire** is **NEVER** used in this way.

- **non plus** is the equivalent of English *neither* in phrases like *me neither*, *neither do I* and so on.

'Je n'aime pas les hamburgers.'	'I don't like hamburgers.'
'Moi non plus.'	'Me neither.'
Il n'y va pas et moi non plus.	He isn't going and neither am I.

- The French word **ne** is missed out when negatives are used without a verb to answer a question.

'Qui a téléphoné?' – 'Personne.'	'Who rang?' – 'Nobody.'
'Qu'est-ce que tu fais cet après-midi?' – 'Rien.'	'What are you doing this afternoon?' – 'Nothing.'

Tip

In everyday conversation French native speakers often miss out the word **ne**. Be careful about doing this yourself in formal situations.

Je peux pas venir ce soir.	I can't come tonight.
Il me l'a pas dit.	He didn't tell me.

Grammar Extra!

Sometimes you will find two of these negative expressions combined.

Ils ne font jamais rien d'intéressant.	They never do anything interesting.
Je ne connais plus personne à Nice.	I don't know anyone in Nice any more.

2 Word order with negatives

- Negative expressions in French 'sandwich' the verb in the present tense and in other tenses that consist of just one word. **ne** goes before the verb and the other half of the expression comes after the verb.

Il ne boit jamais d'alcool.	He never drinks alcohol.
Il ne pleuvait pas.	It wasn't raining.

► In the perfect tense and other tenses that consist of two or more words such as the pluperfect, there are two possibilities:

- **ne ... pas, ne ... rien, ne ... plus** and **ne ... jamais** follow the pattern: **ne (n') + avoir or être + pas + past participle**

Elle n'a pas fait ses devoirs. She hasn't done her homework.

Je n'ai rien dit. I didn't say anything.

Pierre n'est pas encore arrivé. Pierre isn't here yet.

- **ne ... personne** follows the pattern:

ne (n') + avoir or être + past participle + personne

Je n'ai vu personne. I didn't see anybody.

⇒ For more information on the *Perfect tense*, see page 111.

► A negative sentence may also contain a pronoun such as **te, le, lui** and so on that is the direct or indirect object of the verb, or a reflexive pronoun. If so, **ne** comes before the pronoun.

Je ne t'entends pas. I can't hear you.

Ne lui parle pas! Don't speak to him/her!

Tu ne te rappelles pas de lui? Don't you remember him?

Il ne se lève jamais avant midi. He never gets up before midday.

⇒ For more information on *Direct and Indirect object pronouns* and on *Reflexive pronouns*, see pages 47, 49 and 89.

► When a verb is in the infinitive, **ne ... pas, ne ... rien, ne ... plus** and **ne ... jamais** come together before the infinitive.

Il essayait de ne pas rire. He was trying not to laugh.

J'ai peur de ne pas réussir. I'm afraid of not succeeding.

Tip

After these negative expressions, **un, une** and **des** (the *indefinite article*) and **du, de la, de l'** and **des** (the *partitive article*) change to **de**.

⇒ For more information on the *Indefinite article* and the *Partitive article*, see pages 19 and 22.

3 non and pas

► **non** (meaning *no*) is the usual negative answer to a question. It can also correspond to *not* in English.

'Tu veux nous accompagner?' – 'Do you want to come with us?' –

'Non, merci.' **'No thanks.'**

Tu viens ou non? Are you coming or *not*?

J'espère que non. I hope *not*.

► **pas** is generally used when a distinction is being made, or for emphasis. It, too, often corresponds to *not* in English.

'Qui veut m'aider?' – 'Pas moi!' 'Who wants to help me?' – 'Not me!'

'Est-il de retour?' – 'Pas encore.' 'Is he back?' – 'Not yet.'

'Tu as froid?' – 'Pas du tout.' 'Are you cold?' – 'Not at all.'

Pas question! No way!

Key points

- ✓ Negatives indicate when something is not happening or is not true. French uses set expressions or word pairs to indicate this.
- ✓ The two parts of these negative expressions 'sandwich' the verb in tenses consisting of only one word.
- ✓ **ne** comes before any object pronouns or reflexive pronouns.
- ✓ Before infinitives, **ne ... pas, ne ... rien, ne ... plus** and **ne ... jamais** come together.
- ✓ The articles **un, une, des, du, de la** and **de l'** change to **de** after negatives.

QUESTIONS

What is a question?

A **question** is a sentence which is used to ask someone about something and which normally has the verb in front of the subject. A question word such as *why, where, who, which* or *how* is used to ask a question.

How to ask a question in French

1 The basic rules

- There are four ways of asking questions in French:
 - by making your voice go up at the end of the sentence
 - by using the phrase **est-ce que**
 - by changing round the order of words in a sentence
 - by using a question word

2 Asking a question by making your voice go up

- If you are expecting the answer *yes* or *no*, there is a very straightforward way of asking a question. You can keep word order just as it would be in a normal sentence (subject then verb), but turn it into a question by making your voice go up at the end of the sentence. So to turn the sentence **Vous aimez la France** (meaning *You like France*) into a question, all you need to do is to add a question mark and make your voice go up at the end.

Vous (subject) **aimez** (verb) **la France?** Do you like France?

On part tout de suite. We're leaving right away.

On part tout de suite? Are we leaving right away?

C'est vrai. That's that true.

C'est vrai? Is that true?

Tes parents sont en vacances. Your parents on holiday.

Tes parents sont en vacances? Are your parents on holiday?

Tip

French speakers use this way of asking a question in ordinary, everyday conversations.

3 Asking a question by using **est-ce que**

- The phrase **est-ce que** is used to ask a question. Word order stays just the same as it would in an ordinary sentence. **Est-ce que** comes before the subject, and the verb comes after the subject. So to turn the sentence **Tu connais Marie** (meaning *You know Marie*) into a question, all you need to do is to add **est-ce que**.

Est-ce que tu (subject) **connais** (verb) **Marie?** Do you know Marie?

Est-ce que vous allez en ville? Are you going into town?

Est-ce que ta sœur est vraiment heureuse? Is your sister really happy?

4 Asking a question by changing word order

- In ordinary sentences, the verb comes **AFTER** its subject. In this type of question, the verb is put **BEFORE** the subject. This change to normal word order is called **inversion**. You can do this when the subject is a pronoun such as **vous** or **il**. When you change the word order (or **invert**) in this way, you add a hyphen (-) between the verb and the pronoun.

Vous (subject) **aimez** (verb) **la France.** You like France.

Aimez (verb)-**vous** (subject) **la France?** Do you like France?

Il écrit bien. He writes well.

Écrit-il bien? Does he write well?

On part tout de suite. We're leaving right away.

Part-on tout de suite? Are we leaving right away?

- ➡ For more information on **Pronouns**, see page 42.

Tip

This is quite a formal way of asking a question.

- In the perfect tense and other tenses that consist of two or more words such as the pluperfect, the part of the verb that comes from **avoir** or **être** is the one that goes before the pronoun.

As-tu vu mon sac? Have you seen my bag?

Est-elle restée longtemps? Did she stay long?

- ➡ For more information on the **Perfect tense**, see page 111.

- When the verb ends in a vowel in the **il/elle** form, **-t-** is inserted before the pronoun to make the words easier to say.

Aime-t-il les chiens?

Does he like dogs?

A-t-elle assez d'argent?

Does she have enough money?

Tip

Unlike English there are two ways in French of answering *yes* to a question or statement. **oui** is the word you use to reply to an ordinary question.

'Tu l'as fait?' – 'Oui.'

'Have you done it?' – 'Yes.'

'Elle est belle, n'est-ce pas?' – 'Oui.'

'She's beautiful, isn't she?' – 'Yes.'

si is the word you use to reply to a question or statement that contains a negative expression like **ne ... pas**.

'Tu ne l'as pas fait?' – 'Si.'

'Haven't you done it?' – 'Yes (I have).'

'Elle n'est pas très belle.' – 'Mais si!'

'She isn't very beautiful.' – 'Yes, she is!'

Grammar Extra!

You can also form a question in this way with a noun or a person's name. If you do this, the noun or name comes first, then you add an extra pronoun after the verb and link them with a hyphen.

Jean-Pierre (subject) est(verb)-il (pronoun) là?

Is Jean-Pierre there?

La pièce dure-t-elle longtemps?

Does the play last long?

In less formal French, the pronoun may come before the verb, and the noun or name may come at the end of the sentence.

Il est là, Jean-Pierre?

Is Jean-Pierre there?

Elle dure longtemps, la pièce?

Does the play last long?

5 Asking a question by using a question word

- A question word is a word like *when* or *how* that is used to ask for information. The most common French question words are listed on pages 146-150.
- You can use a question word with one of the methods described above:
- you can make your voice go up at the end of the sentence. If you do this, the question word goes at the **END** of the sentence.

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

- you can use **est-ce que**. If you do this, the question word goes at the **START** of the sentence.
- you can change word order so that the verb comes before the subject. If you do this, the question word goes at the **START** of the sentence.

Vous arrivez quand?

Quand est-ce que vous arrivez?

When do you arrive?

Quand arrivez-vous?

Tu prends quel train?

Quel train est-ce que tu prends?

What train are you getting?

Quel train prends-tu?

Ils vont où?

Où est-ce qu'ils vont?

Where are they going?

Où vont-ils?

⇒ For more information on **Negatives**, see page 138.

Key points

- ✓ You ask a question in French by making your voice go up at the end of the sentence, by using **est-ce que**, by changing normal word order, or by using a question word.
- ✓ When you put the verb in front of the subject, you join the two words with a hyphen. A **-t-** is used in the **il/elle** form if the verb ends in a vowel.
- ✓ You use **oui** to answer *yes* to an ordinary question, but **si** if there is a negative in the question or statement.

Question words

1 Common question words

► Listed below are some very common question words. **que, quel, qui, quoi** and **lequel**, are explained on pages 147–150.

- **combien** + verb? how much?, how many?
combien de + noun? how much?, how many?
Combien coûte cet ordinateur? How much does this computer cost?
C'est combien, ce pantalon? How much are these trousers?
Tu en veux combien? Deux? How many do you want? Two?
Combien de personnes vas-tu inviter? How many people are you going to invite?
- **comment?** how?
Comment va-t-elle? How is she?
Comment tu t'appelles? What's your name?

Tip

pardon is also used to ask someone to repeat something, and is the same as *Pardon?* in English. **comment** and **quoi** can mean the same thing, but are informal, and are the same as *What?* in English.

- **où?** where?
Où allez-vous? Where are you going?
D'où viens-tu? Where are you from?

Tip

Be careful not to mix up **où**, which means *where*, and **ou** (without an accent), which means *or*.

- **pourquoi?** why?
Pourquoi est-ce qu'il ne vient pas avec nous? Why isn't he coming with us?
- **quand?** when?
Quand est-ce que tu pars en vacances? When are you going on holiday?
Depuis quand est-ce que vous le connaissez? How long have you known him?

2 **qui?, que? and quoi?**

- In questions, **qui**, **que** and **quoi** are all pronouns. Which of them you choose depends on:
- whether you are referring to people or to things
 - whether you are referring to the subject or object of the verb (the subject is the person or thing that is carrying out the action described by the verb; the object is the person or thing that 'receives' the action)
 - whether the word you use will come after a preposition such as **à**, **de** or **en**
- ⇒ For more information on **Pronouns and Prepositions**, see pages 42 and 62.
- **qui?** and **que?** have longer forms, as shown in the table below. There is a difference in word order between the longer and shorter forms.
- **qui?** is used for talking about people, and means *who?* or *whom?* in English. You can use *whom?* in formal English to refer to the object of verb, though most people use *who?*. **qui?** can be used after a preposition.

Who? Whom?	Referring to people	Meaning	Examples	Meaning
Subject	qui? qui est-ce qui?	who?	Qui vient? Qui est-ce qui vient?	Who's coming?
Object	qui? qui est-ce que?	who? whom?	Qui vois-tu? Qui est-ce que tu vois?	Who/Whom can you see?
After prepositions	qui? qui est-ce que?	who? whom?	De qui est-ce qu'il parle? Pour qui est ce livre? À qui avez-vous écrit?	Who's he talking about? Who's this book for? Who did you write to?, To whom did you write?

Tip

que changes to **qu'** before a vowel, most words beginning with **h**, and the French word **y**.

⇒ For more information on **que** and **qui**, see page 62.

- **à qui** is the usual way of saying *whose* in questions.

À qui est ce sac? Whose is this bag?

⇒ For more information on using **à** to show possession, see page 165.

- **que?** and **quoi?** are used for talking about things, and mean *what?* in English. **que?** cannot be used after a preposition; you have to use **quoi?** instead.

What?	Referring to things	Meaning	Examples	Meaning
Subject	qu'est-ce qui?	what?	Qu'est-ce qui se passe? Qu'est-ce qui t'inquiète?	What's happening? What's worrying you?
Object	qu'est-ce que?	what?	Qu'est-ce que vous faites? Que faites-vous?	What are you doing?
After prepositions	quoi?	what?	À quoi penses-tu? De quoi parlez-vous?	What are you thinking about? What are you talking about?

Tip

It is possible to finish an English sentence with a preposition such as *about* or *of*, even though some people think this is not good grammar.

Who did you write *to*?

What are you talking *about*?

It is **NEVER** possible to end a French sentence with a preposition.

3 **quel?, quelle?, quels? and quelles?**

- **quel?** (meaning *who?*, *which?* or *what?*) can be used with a noun (as an adjective) or can replace a noun (as a pronoun). Compare this with **que?** (and its longer forms) and **quoi?**, which also mean *what?*, but are **NEVER** used with nouns.

⇒ For more information on *Adjectives and Pronouns*, see pages 25 and 42.

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

- **quel, quelle, quels** and **quelles** are all forms of the same word. The form that you choose depends on whether you are referring to something that is masculine or feminine, singular or plural.

	Masculine	Feminine	Meaning
Singular	quel?	quelle?	who? what? which?
Plural	quels?	quelles?	who? what? which?

Quel est ton chanteur préféré?

Who's your favourite singer?

Quel vin recommandez-vous?

Which wine do you recommend?

Quelle est ta couleur préférée?

What's your favourite colour?

Quelle heure est-il?

What time is it?

Quels sont tes chanteurs préférés?

Who are your favourite singers?

Vous jouez de quels instruments?

What instruments do you play?

Quelles sont tes couleurs préférées?

What are your favourite colours?

Quelles chaussures te plaisent le plus?

Which shoes do you like best?

⇒ For more information on how **quel** is used in exclamations, see page 21.

4 **lequel?, laquelle?, lesquels? and lesquelles?**

- In questions **lequel, laquelle, lesquels** and **lesquelles** (meaning *which one/ones?*) are all forms of the same pronoun, and are used to replace nouns. The form that you choose depends on whether you are referring to something that is masculine or feminine, singular or plural.

	Masculine	Feminine	Meaning
Singular	lequel?	laquelle?	which? which one?
Plural	lesquels?	lesquelles?	which? which ones?

'J'ai choisi un livre.' – 'Lequel?'

'I've chosen a book.' – 'Which one?'

Laquelle de ces valises est à Bruno?

Which of these cases is Bruno's?

'Tu te souviens de mes amis?' 'Do you remember my friends?' –
– 'Lesquels?' 'Which ones?'

Lesquelles de vos sœurs sont mariées? Which of your sisters are married?

⇒ For more information on *lequel*, see page 63.

5 **n'est-ce pas?** and **non?**

- English-speakers often use an expression like *isn't it?*, *don't they?*, *weren't we?* or *will you?* tagged on to the end of a sentence to turn it into a question. French uses **n'est-ce pas?** instead. This useful little phrase never changes, so is very easy to use. You use it in questions when you expect the person you are talking to to agree with you.

Il fait chaud, n'est-ce pas? It's warm, isn't it?
Tu parles français, n'est-ce pas? You speak French, don't you?
Vous n'oublierez pas, n'est-ce pas? You won't forget, will you?

- It is very common to use **non** (meaning *no*) in the same way in spoken French. **hein?** means the same as *eh?* in English, and is only used in very informal conversations.

Il fait chaud, non? It's warm, isn't it?
Il fait chaud, hein? It's warm, eh?

Key points

- ✓ In questions **qui?** means *who?*; **que?** and **quoi?** mean *what?*
- ✓ **qui est-ce qui?** (subject) and **qui est-ce que?** (object) are longer forms of **qui?** Both mean *who?* The word order is different from **qui**.
- ✓ **qu'est-ce qui?** (subject) and **qu'est-ce que?** (object) are longer forms of **que?** Both mean *what?* The word order is different from **que**.
- ✓ **qui?** (for people) and **quoi?** (for things) are used after prepositions.
- ✓ **quel?** is both an adjective and a pronoun. It means *who?*, *what?* or *which?* in questions, and is used with a noun or replaces a noun.
- ✓ **lequel?** is a pronoun; it means *which?*, *which one?* or *which ones?* in questions.
- ✓ **n'est-ce pas?** or **non?** can be tagged on to the end of sentences to turn them into questions.

Grammar Extra!

All the questions in the previous section are the actual words that someone uses when they are asking a question, and so they all end with a question mark. These are called **direct** questions. When you are telling someone else about a question that is being asked, you use an **indirect** question. Indirect questions never end with a question mark, and they are always introduced by a verb such as *to ask*, *to tell*, *to wonder*, *to know* and so on.

He asked me what the time was. (His actual question was *What is the time?*)

Tell me which way to go. (Your actual question was *Which way do I go?*)

Word order in indirect questions is generally the same as in English:
question word + subject verb.

Dites-moi quel (question word)	Tell me which bus goes to the
autobus (subject) va (verb) à la	station.
gare.	
Il m'a demandé combien	He asked me how much money
d'argent j'avais.	I had.
Je me demande s'il viendra	I wonder if he'll come or not.
ou pas.	

When the subject of the question is a noun and **NOT** a pronoun like **je** or **il**, the subject and verb that come after the question word are often swapped round.

Je me demande où (question	I wonder where my keys are.
word) sont (verb) mes clés (subject).	
Demande-lui qui est venu.	Ask him who came.

ADVERBS

What is an adverb?

An **adverb** is a word usually used with verbs, adjectives or other adverbs that gives more information about when, how, where, or in what circumstances something happens, for example, *quickly, happily, now*.

How adverbs are used

- In general, adverbs are used together with:
 - verbs (*act quickly, speak strangely, smile cheerfully*)
 - adjectives (*rather ill, a lot better, deeply sorry*)
 - other adverbs (*really fast, too quickly, very well*)
- Adverbs can also relate to the whole sentence; they often tell you what the speaker is thinking or feeling.

Fortunately, Jan had already left.

Actually, I don't think I'll come.

How adverbs are formed

1 The basic rules

- Adverbs in French **NEVER** change their form, no matter what they refer to.

Il est très beau.

He's very handsome.

Elles sont très belles.

They're very beautiful.

J'y vais souvent.

I often go there.

Nous y allons souvent.

We often go there.

- ❗ Note that there is one exception to this rule. The word **tout** changes in certain phrases, for example, **tout seul** (meaning *all alone*).

Il est arrivé tout seul.

He arrived on his own.

Elle est souvent toute seule.

She's often on her own.

- Many English adverbs end in *-ly*, which is added to the end of the adjective (*quick* → *quickly*; *sad* → *sadly*; *frequent* → *frequently*). In French, many adverbs end in **-ment**. This is usually added to the end of the feminine singular form of the adjective.

Masculine adjective	Feminine adjective	Adverb	Meaning
heureux	heureuse	heureusement	fortunately
doux	douce	doucement	gently, slowly
seul	seule	seulement	only

- The adverb ending **-ment** is added to the masculine not the feminine form of the adjective if the masculine ends in **-é, -i** or **-u**.

Masculine adjective	Feminine adjective	Adverb	Meaning
désespéré	désespérée	désespérément	desperately
vrai	vraie	vraiment	truly
absolu	absolue	absolument	absolutely

- If the adjective ends in **-ant**, the adverb ends in **-amment**. If the adjective ends in **-ent**, the adverb ends in **-emment**. The first vowel in the **-emment** and **-amment** endings is pronounced in the same way in both – like the *a* in the English word *cat*.

courant → **couramment** (*fluently*)

récent → **récemment** (*recently*)

- ❗ Note that an exception to this rule is the adverb **lentement** (meaning *slowly*), which comes from the adjective **lent** (meaning *slow*).

2 Irregular adverbs

- There are a number of common irregular adverbs.

Adjective	Meaning	Adverb	Meaning
bon	good	bien	well
gentil	nice, kind	gentiment	nicely, kindly
mauvais	bad	mal	badly
meilleur	better, best	mieux	better
petit	small	peu	little
pire	worse	pis	worse

Elle travaille bien.

She works well.

C'est un emploi très mal payé.

It's a very badly paid job.

3 Adjectives used as adverbs

- Certain adjectives are used as adverbs, mostly in set phrases:

- **bon** good
sentir bon to smell nice

- **cher** expensive
coûter cher to be expensive
payer cher to pay a lot
- **droit** straight
aller tout droit to go straight on
- **dur** hard
travailler dur to work hard
- **fort** loud
parler plus fort to speak up
- **mauvais** bad
sentir mauvais to smell

4 Adverbs made up of more than one word

- Adverbs can be made up of several words instead of just one. Here are some common ones:

bien sûr	of course
c'est-à-dire	that is
d'abord	first
d'habitude	usually
de temps en temps	from time to time
en général	usually
en retard	late
tout de suite	straight away

Key points

- ✓ With the exception of **tout**, French adverbs do not change their form.
- ✓ The ending **-ment** is usually added to the feminine singular form of the corresponding adjective.
- ✓ If the masculine singular adjective ends in **-é**, **-i** or **-u**, the **-ment** ending is added to that.
- ✓ If the adjective ends in **-ant** or **-ent**, the adverb ends in **-amment** or **-emment** (apart from **lentement**).

Comparatives and superlatives of adverbs

1 Comparative adverbs

What is a comparative adverb?

A **comparative adverb** is one which, in English, has **-er** on the end of it or **more** or **less** in front of it, for example, *earlier*, *later*, *sooner*, *more/less frequently*.

- Adverbs can be used to make comparisons in French, just as they can in English. The comparative (*more often*, *faster*) of adverbs is formed using the same phrases as for adjectives.

- **plus ... (que)** more ... (than)
Tu marches plus vite que moi. You walk faster than me.
Elle chante plus fort que les autres. She's singing louder than the others.
- **moins ... (que)** less ... (than)
Parle moins vite! Don't speak so fast! (*literally: Speak less fast!*)
Nous nous voyons moins souvent qu'avant. We see each other less often than before.
- **aussi ... que** as ... as
Je parle français aussi bien que toi! I can speak French as well as you!
Viens aussi vite que possible. Come as quickly as possible.

⇒ For more information on **Comparative adjectives**, see page 34.

2 Superlative adverbs

What is a superlative adverb?

A **superlative adverb** is one which, in English, has **-est** on the end of it or **most** or **least** in front of it, for example, *soonest*, *fastest*, *most/least frequently*.

- The superlative of adverbs (*the most*, *the fastest*) is formed using the same phrases as for adjectives, except that **le NEVER** changes to **la** or **les** in the feminine and plural with adverbs as it does with adjectives.

- **le plus ... (que)** the most ... (that)
Marianne parle le plus vite. Marianne speaks fastest.
- **le moins ... (que)** the least ... (that)
C'est Gordon qui a mangé le moins. Gordon ate the least.

⇒ For more information on **Superlative adjectives**, see page 34.

3 Adverbs with irregular comparatives and superlatives

- Some of the most common adverbs have irregular comparative and superlative forms.

Adverb	Meaning	Comparative	Meaning	Superlative	Meaning
beaucoup	a lot	plus	more	le plus	(the) most
bien	well	mieux	better	le mieux	(the) best
mal	badly	pis plus mal	worse	le pis le plus mal	(the) worst
peu	little	moins	less	le moins	(the) least

C'est lui qui danse le mieux. He dances best.

Key points

- ✓ Comparatives of adverbs are formed in the same way as comparatives of adjectives, using **plus ... (que)**, **moins ... (que)** and **aussi ... que**.
- ✓ Superlatives of adverbs are formed in the same way as superlatives of adjectives, using **le plus ... (que)** and **le moins ... (que)**. **le** never changes in the feminine and plural.
- ✓ Unlike adjectives, adverbs do not change their form to agree with the verb, adjective or other adverb they relate to.

Some common adverbs

- Here are some common adverbs that do not end in **-ment**:

alors	then, so, at that time
après	afterwards
après-demain	the day after tomorrow
aujourd'hui	today
assez	enough, quite
aussi	also, too, as
avant-hier	the day before yesterday
beaucoup	a lot, much
bientôt	soon
cependant	however
dedans	inside
dehors	outside
déjà	already, before
demain	tomorrow
depuis	since
derrière	behind
devant	in front
encore	still, even, again
enfin	at last
ensemble	together
ensuite	then
environ	about
hier	yesterday
ici	here
jamais	never, ever

Tip

jamais can sometimes be used without **ne** to mean *never* or *ever*.

'Est-ce que tu vas souvent au cinéma?' – 'Non, jamais.'

'Do you go to the cinema a lot?' – 'No, *never*.'

As-tu jamais revu ton père?

Did you *ever* see your father again?

➞ For more information on **Negatives**, see page 138.

là	there, here
là-bas	over there
loin	far, far off, a long time ago

longtemps	a long time
maintenant	now, nowadays
même	even
moins	less
où	where
parfois	sometimes
partout	everywhere
peu	not much, not very

Tip

Be careful not to confuse **peu**, which means *not much* or *not very*, with **un peu**, which means *a little* or *a bit*.

Il voyage peu.
Elle est un peu timide.

He doesn't travel much.
She's a bit shy.

peut-être	perhaps
plus	more
presque	nearly
puis	then
quelquefois	sometimes
si	so
soudain	suddenly
souvent	often
surtout	especially, above all
tard	late
tôt	early
toujours	always, still
tout	all, very
très	very
trop	too much, too
vite	quick, fast, soon

Tip

vite and **rapide** can both mean *fast* or *quick*. Remember, though, that **vite** is an **adverb** and **rapide** is an **adjective**.

une voiture rapide
Il roule trop vite.

a fast car
He drives too fast.

► Some of the adverbs listed on pages 157 and 158 can be followed by **de** and used in front of a noun to talk about quantities or numbers of things or people:

- **assez de** enough
Nous n'avons pas assez de temps. We don't have enough time.
- **beaucoup de** a lot of
Elle fait beaucoup de fautes. She makes a lot of mistakes.
- **combien de** how much, how many
Combien de personnes as-tu invitées? How many people have you invited?
- **trop de** too much, too many
J'ai mangé trop de fromage. I've eaten too much cheese.

► Several of the adverbs listed on pages 157 and 158 can also be used as prepositions: **après**, **avant**, **devant**, **derrière** and **depuis**.

⇒ For more information on **Prepositions**, see page 162.

► The question words **combien** (meaning *how much*, *how many*), **comment** (meaning *how*), **pourquoi** (meaning *why*) and **quand** (meaning *when*) are described on page 146.

► **pas**, **plus** and **jamais** are used in negative word pairs.

⇒ For more information on **Negatives**, see page 138.

Key points

- ✓ Many very common adverbs do not end in **-ment**. They are worth learning.
- ✓ Several adverbs can be followed by **de** + noun and used to talk about quantities and numbers.

Word order with adverbs

1 Adverbs with verbs

- In English, adverbs can come in different places in a sentence.
- I'm never coming back.
See you soon!
Suddenly the phone rang.
I'd really like to come.
- In French, the rules are more fixed. When an adverb goes with a verb that consists of just one word, such as a verb in the present tense or the imperfect tense, it generally goes AFTER that verb.

Il neige toujours en janvier. It always snows in January.
Je pensais souvent à toi. I often used to think about you.

- When an adverb goes with a verb that consists of more than one word, such as a verb in the perfect tense, it generally comes BETWEEN the part of the verb that comes from avoir or être and the past participle.

Il a trop mangé. He's eaten too much.
Ils sont déjà partis. They've already gone.

⇒ For more information on the Perfect tense, see page 111.

- The rule above covers most adverbs that tell you about quantity or time (apart from a few listed later), and some very common ones telling you how something is done.

beaucoup	a lot, much
bien	well
bientôt	soon
déjà	already, before
encore	still, even, again
enfin	at last
mal	badly
mieux	better
peu	not much, not very
rarement	rarely
souvent	often
toujours	always, still
trop	too much, too
vraiment	really

- Some adverbs FOLLOW the past participle of verbs that consist of more than one word. This rule covers most adverbs that tell you how or where something is done, and a few adverbs that tell you about time.

aujourd'hui	today
demain	tomorrow
hier	yesterday
loin	far, far off, a long time ago
longtemps	a long time
partout	everywhere
quelquefois	sometimes
tôt	early
tard	late
vite	quick, fast, soon

On les a vus partout. We saw them everywhere.
Elle est revenue hier. She came back yesterday.

2 Adverbs with adjectives and other adverbs

- When an adverb goes with an adjective, it generally comes just BEFORE that adjective.

Ils ont une très belle maison. They have a very nice house.
une femme bien habillée a well-dressed woman

- When an adverb goes with another adverb, it generally comes just BEFORE that adverb.

C'est trop tard. It's too late.
Fatima travaille beaucoup plus vite. Fatima works much faster.

Key points

- ✓ Adverbs follow verbs that consist of just one word.
- ✓ They generally go before the past participle of verbs that consist of two words when they relate to quantity or time.
- ✓ They generally go after the past participle of verbs that consist of two words when they relate to how or where something is done.
- ✓ When used with an adjective or another adverb, they generally come just before it.

PREPOSITIONS

What is a preposition?

A **preposition** is a word such as *at, for, with, into* or *from*, which is usually followed by a noun, pronoun or, in English, a word ending in *-ing*. Prepositions show how people and things relate to the rest of the sentence, for example, *She's at home.; a tool for cutting grass; it's from David.*

Using prepositions

- Prepositions are used in front of nouns and pronouns (such as *me, him, the man* and so on), and show the relationship between the noun or pronoun and the rest of the sentence. Some prepositions can be used before verb forms ending in *-ing* in English.

I showed my ticket to the inspector.

Come with me.

This brush is really good for cleaning shoes.

⇒ For more information on **Nouns and Pronouns**, see pages 1 and 42.

- Prepositions are also used after certain adjectives and verbs and link them to the rest of the sentence.

Je suis très contente de te voir. I'm very happy to see you.

Tu aimes jouer au tennis? Do you like playing tennis?

- In English it is possible to finish a sentence with a preposition such as *for, about* or *on*, even though some people think this is not good grammar. You can **NEVER** end a French sentence with a preposition.

Le café au lait, c'est pour qui? Who's the white coffee for?

De quoi parlez-vous? What are you talking about?

Tip

The French preposition is not always the direct equivalent of the preposition that is used in English. It is often difficult to give just one English equivalent for French prepositions, as the way they are used varies so much between the two languages.

à, de and en

1 à

- Be careful not to confuse the preposition **à** with the **il/elle/on** form of the verb **avoir: il a** (meaning *he has*) and so on.

Tip

When **à** is followed by **le**, the two words become **au**. Similarly, when **à** is followed by **les**, the two words become **aux**.

⇒ For more information on **Articles**, see page 12.

- **à** can mean *at*.

Les melons se vendent à 2 euros pièce.

Melons are selling at 2 euros each.

Nous roulions à 100 km à l'heure.

We were driving at 100 km an hour.

J'ai lancé une pierre à Chantal.

I threw a stone at Chantal.

Je suis à la maison.

I'm at home.

- ⓘ Note that **à la maison** can also mean *to the house*.

Je rentre à la maison.

I'm going back to the house or back home.

- **à** can mean *in*.

Nous habitons à la campagne.

We live in the country.

Mon père est à Londres.

My father is in London.

Restez au lit.

Stay in bed.

Jean est entré, un livre à la main.

Jean came in with a book in his hand.

Tip

à is used to mean *in* with the names of towns and cities, and **au** (singular) or **aux** (plural) with the names of countries that are masculine in French.

J'habite au Mexique.

I live in Mexico.

Elle est aux États-Unis.

She's in the States.

- **à** can mean *to*.

Je vais au cinéma ce soir.

I'm going to the cinema tonight.

Donne le ballon à ton frère.

Give the ball to your brother.

Tip

à is used to mean *to* with the names of towns and cities, and **au** (singular) or **aux** (plural) with the names of countries that are masculine in French.

Je vais assez souvent à Paris. I go to Paris quite often.
Il va aux États-Unis la semaine prochaine. He's going to the States next week.

► **à** is also used with **de** to mean *from ... to ...*

le trajet de Londres à Paris the journey from London to Paris
La banque est ouverte de 9 heures à midi. The bank is open from 9 to 12.
Je suis en vacances du 21 juin au 5 juillet. I'm on holiday from 21 June to 5 July.

► **à** can mean *on*.

Il y a deux beaux tableaux au mur. There are two beautiful paintings on the wall.
Le bureau se trouve au premier étage. The office is on the first floor.
Qu'est-ce qu'il y a à la télé ce soir? What's on TV tonight?

❗ Note that **à** and **sur** can both mean *on* in English. **sur** usually means *on the top of something*. **sur la télé** means *on top of the TV set*, but **à la télé** means *broadcast on TV*. Both can be translated as *on the TV* in English. **sur le mur** means *on top of the wall*, but **au mur** means *hanging on the wall*.

► **à** is often used to describe:

- what someone looks like or is wearing

la femme au chapeau vert the woman with the green hat
un garçon aux yeux bleus a boy with blue eyes

- how something is done

fait à la main hand-made
laver à la machine to machine-wash

- what a type of food is made of

une tarte aux poires a pear tart
un sandwich au jambon a ham sandwich

- how you travel

On y va à pied?

Shall we walk?

Il est venu à vélo.

He came on his bike.

Tip

Apart from **à vélo** and **à cheval** (meaning *on horseback*), the prepositions **en** and **par** are used with most other means of transport.

► **à** can also show what something is used for.

une boîte aux lettres a letter box
une machine à laver a washing machine
une tasse à café a coffee cup

❗ Note that **une tasse à café** means a *coffee cup*, but **une tasse de café** means a *cup of coffee*. In the same way, **un verre à vin** means a *wine glass* but **un verre de vin** means a *glass of wine*.

► **à** is used with times, centuries and the names of festivals.

à trois heures at three o'clock
au vingtième siècle in the twentieth century
à Noël at Christmas
à Pâques at Easter

► **à** is used to talk about distances and rates.

La maison est à 6 kilomètres d'ici. The house is 6 kilometres from here.

C'est à deux minutes de chez moi. It's two minutes from my place.

Je suis payé à l'heure. I'm paid by the hour.

► **à** shows who owns something, or whose turn it is.

Ce cahier est à Paul. This notebook is Paul's.

C'est à toi? Is this yours?

C'est à qui de nettoyer la salle de bains? Whose turn is it to clean the bathroom?

► If you want to say where something hurts, you use **à**.

J'ai mal à la tête. I've got a headache.

J'ai mal aux jambes. My legs ache.

J'ai mal à la gorge. I've got a sore throat.

- **à** is used with certain adjectives.

Son écriture est difficile à lire. His/Her writing is difficult to read.
Je suis prêt à tout. I'm ready for anything.

⇒ For more information about *Prepositions after adjectives*, see page 183.

- **à** is used with certain verbs.

s'intéresser à quelque chose to be interested in something
penser à quelque chose to think about something

⇒ For more information about *Prepositions after verbs*, see page 178.

- Finally, some common ways of saying goodbye contain **à**.

À bientôt! See you soon!
À demain! See you tomorrow!
À samedi! See you Saturday!
À tout à l'heure! See you later!

2 de

- **de** is used as part of the partitive article, which is usually the equivalent of *some* or *any* in English.

⇒ For more information on the *Partitive article*, see page 22.

Tip

When **de** is followed by **le**, the two words become **du**. Similarly, when **de** is followed by **les**, the two words become **des**.

⇒ For more information on *Articles*, see page 12.

- **de** can mean *from*.

Je viens d'Édimbourg. I'm from Edinburgh.
une lettre de Rachid a letter from Rachid
Je la vois de temps en temps. I see her from time to time.

Tip

de changes to **d'** in front of a word starting with a vowel, most words starting with **h**, and the French word **y**.

- **de** is also used with **à** to mean *from ... to ...*

le trajet de Londres à Paris the journey from London to Paris
La banque est ouverte de 9 heures à midi. The bank is open from 9 to 12.

Je suis en vacances du 21 juin au 5 juillet. I'm on holiday from 21 June to 5 July.

- **de** often shows who or what something belongs to.

un ami de la famille a friend of the family
les fenêtres de la maison the windows of the house
la voiture de Marie-Pierre Marie-Pierre's car

- **de** can indicate what something contains, when it usually corresponds to *of* in English.

une boîte d'allumettes a box of matches
deux bouteilles de vin two bottles of wine
une tasse de café a cup of coffee

- ⓘ Note that **une tasse de café** means *a cup of coffee* but **une tasse à café** means *a coffee cup*. In the same way, **un verre à vin** means *a wine glass* but **un verre de vin** means *a glass of wine*.

- **de** can describe what material something is made of.

une robe de coton a cotton dress
une porte de bois a wooden door

Tip

en can also be used to say what something is made of, and is used when it is important to stress the material.

un bracelet en or a gold bracelet

- You can use **de** to say what something is used for.

un sac de couchage a sleeping bag
un terrain de foot a football pitch
un arrêt de bus a bus stop

- **de** is found after superlatives (*the most...*, *the biggest*, *the least ...* and so on).

la plus belle ville du monde the most beautiful city in the world
le film le moins intéressant du festival the least interesting film in the festival

⇒ For more information on *Superlative adjectives*, see page 34.

- **de** is used in phrases to talk about quantities.

Elle fait beaucoup de fautes.
Combien de personnes as-tu invitées?

She makes a lot of mistakes.
 How many people have you invited?

- **de** is used with certain adjectives.

Je suis très surpris de te voir.
Il est triste de partir.

I'm very surprised to see you.
 He's sad to be leaving.

- ⇒ For more information on **Prepositions after adjectives**, see page 183.

Grammar Extra!

If you want to use an adjective after **quelque chose**, **rien**, **quelqu'un** and **personne**, you link the words with **de**.

quelqu'un d'important
quelque chose d'intéressant
rien d'amusant

someone important
 something interesting
 nothing funny

- **de** is found after certain verbs.

dépendre de quelque chose
parler de quelque chose

to depend on something
 to talk about something

- ⇒ For more information on **Prepositions after verbs**, see page 178.

3 en

- ⚠ Note that **en** is never followed by an article such as **le**, **du** or **des**.

- **en** is used to talk about a place. It can be the equivalent of the English to or in.

Je vais en ville.

I'm going to town.

Il a un appartement en ville.

He has a flat in town.

Nous allons en France cet été.

We're going to France this summer.

Nous habitons en France.

We live in France.

Tip

en is used with the names of countries that are feminine in French. Use **à** with the names of towns and cities, and **au** or **aux** with masculine countries.

- **en** is used to talk about years and months, and to say how long something will take, when it is the equivalent of *in/within*:

en 1923

in 1923

en janvier

in January

Je le ferai en trois jours.

I'll do it in three days.

Grammar Extra!

en and **dans** can both be used in French to talk about a length of time, but the meaning is very different.

Je le ferai dans trois jours.

I'll do it in three days.

Je le ferai en trois jours.

I'll do it in three days.

Though both can be translated in the same way, the first sentence means that you'll do it in three days' time; the second means that it will take three days for you to do it.

- **en** is used with the names of the seasons, except for spring.

en été

in summer

en automne

in autumn

en hiver

in winter

BUT: **au printemps**

in spring

- **en** is used for most means of transport.

Je suis venu en voiture.

I came by car.

C'est plus rapide en train.

It's quicker by train.

Il est allé en Italie en avion.

He flew to Italy.

Tip

The prepositions **à** and **par** are also used with means of transport.

- Use **en** to say what language something is in.

une lettre écrite en espagnol

a letter written in Spanish

Dis-le en anglais.

Say it in English.

- **en** can be used to say what something is made of when you particularly want to stress the material.

un bracelet en or

a bracelet made of gold, a gold bracelet

un manteau en cuir

a coat made of leather, a leather coat

Tip

de can also be used to say what something is made of.

une porte de bois

a wooden door

- **en** often describes the situation or state that something or someone is in.

Je suis en vacances.

I'm on holiday.

La voiture est en panne.

The car's broken down.

Tu es toujours en retard!

You're always late!

- **en** is found before present participles, the form of the verb that ends in *-ing* in English and *-ant* in French.

Je fais mes devoirs en regardant la télé.

I do my homework while watching TV.

Il m'a vu en passant devant la porte.

He saw me as he came past the door.

- ⇒ For more information on the **Present participle**, see page 125.

Key points

- ✓ **à**, **de** and **en** are very frequent prepositions which you will use all the time.
- ✓ Each of them has several possible meanings, which depend on the context they are used in.

Some other common prepositions

- 7 Note that some of these words are also adverbs, for example, **avant**, **depuis**.

- ⇒ For more information on the **Adverbs**, see page 152.

- The following prepositions are also frequently used in French:

- **après** after

après le déjeuner

after lunch

après son départ

after he had left

la troisième maison après la mairie

the third house after the town hall

Après vous!

After you!

- 7 Note that where English uses a verb in the perfect tense following *after*, French uses the infinitive **avoir** or **être** and a past participle.

Nous viendrons après avoir fait la vaisselle.

We'll come after we've done the dishes.

- **avant** before

Il est arrivé avant toi.

He arrived before you.

Tournez à gauche avant la poste.

Turn left before the post office.

- 7 Note that where English uses a verb ending in *-ing* after *before*, French uses **de** followed by the infinitive.

Je préfère finir mes devoirs avant de manger.

I prefer to finish my homework before eating.

- **avec** with

avec mon père

with my father

une chambre avec salle de bain

a room with its own bathroom

Ouvre-la avec un couteau.

Open it with a knife.

- **chez**

Elle est chez Pierre.

She's at Pierre's house.

Elle va chez Pierre.

She's going to Pierre's house.

Je reste chez moi ce weekend.

I'm staying at home this weekend.

Je vais rentrer chez moi.

I'm going home.

Ils habitent près de chez moi.

They live near my house.

Tip

chez is also used with the name of jobs or professions to indicate a shop or place of business.

Je vais chez le médecin.

I'm going to the doctor's.

- **contre** against

Ne mets pas ton vélo contre le mur.

Don't put your bike against the wall.

- **dans** in, into

Il est dans sa chambre.

He's in his bedroom.

Nous passons une semaine dans les Alpes.

We're spending a week in the Alps.

dans deux mois

in two months' time

Il est entré dans mon bureau.

He came into my office.

Grammar Extra!

dans and **en** can both be used in French to talk about a length of time, but the meaning is very different.

Je le ferai dans trois jours.

I'll do it in three days.

Je le ferai en trois jours.

I'll do it in three days.

Though both can be translated in the same way, the first sentence means that you'll do it in three days' time; the second means that it will take three days for you to do it.

- **depuis** since, for

Elle habite Paris depuis 1998.

She's been living in Paris since 1998.

Elle habite Paris depuis cinq ans.

She's been living in Paris for five years.

- ❓ Note that French uses the **present tense** with **depuis** to talk about actions that started in the past and are still going on.

Il est en France depuis le mois de septembre.

He's been in France since September. (*and he is still there*)

If you are saying how long something has **NOT** happened for, you use the **perfect tense** with **depuis**.

Nous ne l'avons pas vu depuis un mois.

We haven't seen him for a month.

➞ For more information on the **Present tense** and the **Perfect tense**, see pages 71 and 111.

- **derrière** behind

derrière la porte

behind the door

- **devant** in front of

Il est assis devant moi.

He's sitting in front of me.

- **entre ... et** between ... and

Il est assis entre son père et son oncle.

He's sitting between his father and his uncle.

Le bureau est fermé entre 13 et 14 heures.

The office is closed between 1 and 2 p.m.

- **jusque** as far as, until

Je te raccompagne jusqu'chez toi.

I'll go with you as far as your house.

Jusqu'ou vas-tu?

How far are you going?

Jusqu'ici nous n'avons pas eu de problèmes.

Up to now we've had no problems.

Je reste jusqu'à la fin du mois.

I'm staying until the end of the month.

Tip

jusque changes to **jusqu'** before a word beginning with a vowel, most words starting with **h**, and the French word **y**.

- **par** by, with, per

deux par deux

two by two

par le train

by train

par la poste

by post

par email

by email

Son nom commence par un H.

His name begins with H.

Prenez trois cachets par jour.

Take three tablets per day.

Le voyage coûte quatre cents euros par personne.

The trip costs four hundred euros per person.

Nous nous voyons une fois par mois.

We see each other once a month.

Il est tombé par terre.

He fell down.

Il y a beaucoup de touristes par ici.

There are a lot of tourists around here.

Tip

The prepositions **à** and **en** are also used with means of transport.

- **pendant** during, for

Ça s'est passé pendant l'été.

It happened during the summer.

Il n'a pas pu travailler pendant plusieurs mois.

He couldn't work for several months.

Tip

French uses the perfect tense with **pendant** to talk about actions in the past that are completed.

Nous avons habité pendant dix ans en Écosse.

We lived in Scotland for ten years. (*but don't any more*)

You can also miss out **pendant**.

Nous avons habité dix ans en Écosse.

We lived in Scotland for ten years.

pendant is also used to talk about something that will happen in the future.

Je serai à New York pendant un mois.

I'll be in New York for a month.

⇒ For more information on the **Perfect tense**, see page 111.

- **pour** for (who or what something is for, and where something or someone is going)

C'est un cadeau pour toi.

It's a present for you.

Nous voudrions une chambre pour deux nuits.

We'd like a room for two nights.

le train pour Bordeaux

the train for Bordeaux

- 7 Note that **pour** can also be used with infinitives, when it has the meaning of *in order to*.

Elle téléphone pour savoir à quelle heure on arrivera.

She's ringing to find out what time we'll get there.

Pour aller à Nice, s'il vous plaît?

Which way is it to Nice, please?

- **sans** without

Elle est venue sans son frère.

She came without her brother.

un café sans sucre

a coffee without sugar

un pull sans manches

a sleeveless sweater

- 7 Note that **sans** can also be used before infinitives in French. In English a verb form ending in *-ing* is used after *without*.

Elle est partie sans dire au revoir.

She left *without saying* goodbye.

- **sauf** except

Tout le monde vient sauf lui.

Everyone's coming except him.

- **sous** under

sous la table

under the table

sous terre

underground

- **sur** on

Pose-le sur le bureau.

Put it down on the desk.

Ton sac est sur la table.

Your bag is on the table.

Vous verrez l'hôpital sur votre gauche.

You'll see the hospital on your left.

un livre sur la politique

a book on politics

- 7 Note that **à** and **sur** can both mean *on* in English. **sur** usually means *on the top of* something. **sur la télé** means *on top of the TV set*, but **à la télé** means *broadcast on TV*. Both can be translated as *on the TV* in English. **sur le mur** means *on top of the wall*, but **au mur** means *hanging on the wall*.

Tip

With numbers and measurements **sur** can also mean *in*, *out of* and *by*.

une personne sur six

one person *in* ten

J'ai eu quatorze sur vingt en maths.

I got 14 *out of* 20 in maths.

La pièce fait quatre mètres sur deux.

The room measures four metres *by* two.

- **vers** towards (*a place*), at about

Il allait vers la gare.

He was going towards the station.

Je rentre chez moi vers cinq heures.

I go home at about 5 o'clock.

- **voici** (meaning *this is, here is*) and **voilà** (meaning *there is, that is*) are two very useful prepositions that French speakers often use to point things out.

Voici mon frère et voilà ma sœur.

This is my brother and that's my sister.

Voici ton sac.

Here's your bag.

Le voici!

Here he/it is!

Tiens! Voilà Paul.

Look! There's Paul.

Tu as perdu ton stylo? En voilà un autre.

Have you lost your pen? Here's another one.

Les voilà!

There they are!

Prepositions consisting of more than one word

- Prepositions can also be made up of several words instead of just one.

au bord de at the edge of, at the side of

au bout de after

à cause de because of

au-dessous de below

au-dessus de above

au fond de at the bottom of, at the end of

au milieu de in the middle of

Au bout d'un moment, il s'est endormi. After a while, he fell asleep.

Nous ne pouvons pas sortir à cause du mauvais temps. We can't go out because of the bad weather.

J'ai garé la voiture au bord de la route. I parked the car by the side of the road.

Mon porte-monnaie est au fond de mon sac. My purse is at the bottom of my bag.

Place le vase au milieu de la table. Put the vase in the middle of the table.

Prepositions after verbs

- Some French verbs can be followed by an infinitive (the *to* form of the verb) and linked to it by either **de** or **à**, or no preposition at all. This is also true of verbs and their objects: the person or thing that the verb 'happens' to.

⇒ For more information on *Verbs followed by an infinitive*, see page 133.

Tip

The preposition that is used in French is not always the same as the one that is used in English. Whenever you learn a new verb, try to learn which preposition can be used after it too.

- The lists in this section concentrate on those French verbs that involve a different construction from the one that is used in English.

1 Verbs that are followed by **à** + object

- **à** is often the equivalent of the English word *to* when it is used with an indirect object after verbs like *send*, *give* and *say*.

dire quelque chose à quelqu'un	to say something <u>to</u> someone
donner quelque chose à quelqu'un	to give something <u>to</u> someone
écrire quelque chose à quelqu'un	to write something <u>to</u> someone
envoyer quelque chose à quelqu'un	to send something <u>to</u> someone
montrer quelque chose à quelqu'un	to show something <u>to</u> someone

⇒ For more information on *Indirect objects*, see page 49.

Tip

There is an important difference between French and English with this type of verb. In English, you can say either *to give something to someone* or *to give someone something*; *to show something to someone* or *to show someone something*. You can **NEVER** miss out **à** in French in the way that you can sometimes miss out *to* in English.

- Here are some verbs taking **à** in French that have a different construction in English.

croire à quelque chose	to believe <u>in</u> something
s'intéresser à quelqu'un/quelque chose	to be interested <u>in</u> someone/something
jouer à quelque chose	to play something (<i>sports, games</i>)
obéir à quelqu'un	to obey someone
penser à quelqu'un/quelque chose	to think <u>about</u> someone/something
répondre à quelqu'un	to answer someone
téléphoner à quelqu'un	to phone someone

Tip

When you are using **jouer** to talk about sports and games, you use **à**. When you are using **jouer** to talk about musical instruments, you use **de**.

jouer au tennis	to play tennis
jouer aux échecs	to play chess
jouer de la guitare	to play the guitar
jouer du piano	to play the piano

- **plaître** followed by **à** is a common way of saying you like something.
- | | |
|---|--|
| plaître à quelqu'un | to please someone (<i>literally</i>) |
| Ton cadeau me plaît beaucoup. | I like your present a lot. |
| Ce film plaît beaucoup aux jeunes. | This film is very popular with young people. |

Grammar Extra!

manquer à works quite differently from its English equivalent, *to miss*. The English object is the French subject, and the English subject is the French object.

manquer à quelqu'un	to be missed by someone (<i>literally</i>)
Tu (subject) me (object) manques.	I (subject) miss you (object).
Mon pays (subject) me (object) manque beaucoup.	I (subject) miss my country (object) very much.

- There are also some verbs where you can put a direct object before **à**. The verb **demand** is the most common.

demand quelque chose **à** quelqu'un to ask someone something, to ask someone for something

⇒ For more information on *Direct objects*, see page 47.

- ❗ Note that **demander** in French does NOT mean *to demand*. It means *to ask something or to ask for something*. If you want to say *demand* in French, use **exiger**.

Nous avons demandé notre chemin à un chauffeur de taxi. We asked a taxi driver the way.

J'exige des excuses! I demand an apology!

2 Verbs that are followed by **de** + object

- Here are some verbs taking **de** in French that have a different construction in English.

changer de quelque chose to change something (*one's shoes and so on*)

dépendre de quelqu'un/quelque chose to depend on someone/something

s'excuser de quelque chose to apologize for something

jouer de quelque chose to play something

parler de quelque chose to talk about something

se servir de quelque chose to use something

se souvenir de quelqu'un/quelque chose to remember someone/something

Tip

When you are using **jouer** to talk about sports and games, you use **à**. When you are using **jouer** to talk about musical instruments, you use **de**.

jouer au tennis to play tennis

jouer aux échecs to play chess

jouer de la guitare to play the guitar

jouer du piano to play the piano

- Some common phrases using **avoir** also contain **de**.

avoir besoin de quelque chose to need something

avoir envie de quelque chose to want something

avoir peur de quelque chose to be afraid of something

- There are also some verbs where you can put a direct object before **de**. **remercier** is the most common.

remercier quelqu'un de quelque chose to thank someone for something

- ⇒ For more information on *Direct objects*, see page 47.

Grammar Extra!

The verb **se tromper de quelque chose** is often the equivalent of *to get the wrong ...*

Je me suis trompé de numéro. I got the wrong number.

Je me suis trompé de maison. I got the wrong house.

3 Verbs taking a direct object in French but not in English

- In English there are a few verbs that are followed by *for*, *on*, *in*, *to* or *at* which, in French, are not followed by a preposition such as **à** or **de**. Here are the most common:

attendre quelqu'un/quelque chose to wait for sb/sth

chercher quelqu'un/quelque chose to look for sb/sth

demander quelqu'un/quelque chose to ask for sb/sth

écouter quelqu'un/quelque chose to listen to sb/sth

espérer quelque chose to hope for sth

payer quelque chose to pay for sth

regarder quelqu'un/quelque chose to look at sb/sth

- ❗ Note that **attendre** does NOT mean *to attend* in English. It means *to wait for*. If you want to say that you attend something, use **assister à quelque chose**.

Je t'attends devant la gare. I'll wait for you in front of the station.

Vous allez assister au concert? Are you going to attend the concert?

- **habiter** can be used with or without a preposition:

- habiter** is mostly used without a preposition when you are talking about living in a house, a flat and so on

Nous habitons un petit appartement en ville. We live in a small flat in town.

- use **habiter with à** when you are talking about a town or city, and **au** (*singular*) or **aux** (*plural*) with the names of countries that are masculine in French

Nous habitons à Liverpool. We live in Liverpool.

Nous habitons aux États-Unis. We live in the United States.

- use **habiter with en** when you are talking about feminine countries

Nous habitons en Espagne. We live in Spain.

Key points

- ✓ French prepositions after verbs are often not the ones that are used in English. French verbs often have a different construction from English verbs.
- ✓ French verbs are usually linked to their objects by **de**, **à** or nothing at all.
- ✓ You can never miss out **à** in French in the way that you can miss out *to* in English constructions like *to give someone something*.

Prepositions after adjectives

- Just like verbs, some French adjectives can be linked to what follows by either **à** or **de**.
- An adjective followed by **de** or **à** can be followed by a noun, a pronoun or an infinitive.
- Some adjectives that can be followed by **de** are used to say how you feel, that you are certain about something, or that it is necessary or important to do something. These are the most common:

certain	certain
content	happy
désolé	sorry
enchanté	delighted
heureux	happy
important	important
malheureux	unhappy
nécessaire	necessary
sûr	sure
triste	sad

Tu es sûr de pouvoir venir?

Are you sure you can come?

Enchanté de faire votre connaissance.

Delighted to meet you.

Il est nécessaire de réserver.

You have to book.

Grammar Extra!

- Some adjectives, such as **facile** (meaning *easy*), **intéressant** (meaning *interesting*) or **impossible** (meaning *impossible*), can be followed by either **à** or **de**. **de** tends to be used when you are saying something that is generally true. **à** tends to be used when you are saying something about someone or something in particular.

Il est difficile de prendre une décision.

It's difficult to make a decision.

Il est difficile à connaître.

He's difficult to get to know.

Son accent est difficile à comprendre.

His accent is difficult to understand.

CONJUNCTIONS

What is a conjunction?

A **conjunction** is a word such as *and*, *but*, *or*, *so*, *if* and *because*, that links two words or phrases of a similar type, or two parts of a sentence, for example, *Diane and I have been friends for years; I left because I was bored.*

et, mais, ou, parce que and si

► **et, mais, ou, parce que** and **si** are the most common conjunctions that you need to know in French.

- **et** and

toi et moi

you and me

Il pleut et il fait très froid.

It's raining and it's very cold.

- **mais** but

C'est cher mais de très bonne qualité.

It's expensive, but very good quality.

⑦ Note that **mais** is also commonly found in front of **oui** and **si**.

'Tu viens ce soir?' – 'Mais oui!'

'Are you coming tonight?' –
'Definitely!'

**'Il n'a pas encore fini?' –
'Mais si!'**

'Hasn't he finished yet?' – 'He
certainly has!'

- **ou** or

Tu préfères le vert ou le bleu?

Do you like the green one or the
blue one?

Donne-moi ça ou je me fâche!

Give me that or I'll get cross!

Tip

Be careful not to confuse **ou** (meaning *or*) with **où** (meaning *where*).

- **parce que** because

**Je ne peux pas sortir parce que
j'ai encore du travail à faire.**

I can't go out because I've still got
work to do.

Tip

parce que changes to **parce qu'** before a word beginning with a vowel, most words starting with **h**, and the French word **y**.

**Il ne vient pas parce qu'il n'a
pas de voiture.**

He isn't coming because he
doesn't have a car.

- **si** if

Je me demande si elle ment.

I wonder if she's lying.

**Si j'étais à ta place, je ne
l'inviterais pas.**

If I were you, I wouldn't invite him.

Tip

si changes to **s'** before **il** or **ils**.

**S'il ne pleut pas, on mangera
dehors.**

If it doesn't rain, we'll eat
outside.

Some other common conjunctions

► Here are some other common French conjunctions:

- **car** because

Il faut prendre un bus pour y accéder car il est interdit d'y monter en voiture.

You need to take a bus to get there because cars are prohibited.

❗ Note that **car** is used in formal language or in writing. The normal way of saying *because* is **parce que**.

- **comme** as

Comme il pleut, je prends la voiture.

As it's raining, I'm taking the car.

- **donc** so

J'ai raté le train, donc je serai en retard.

I missed the train, so I'll be late.

- **lorsque** when

J'allais composer ton numéro lorsque tu as appelé.

I was about to dial your number when you called.

- **quand** when

Je ne sors pas quand il pleut.

I don't go out when it rains.

❗ Note that when **quand** and **lorsque** are used to talk about something that will happen in the future, the French verb has to be in the future tense even though English uses a verb in the present tense.

Quand je serai riche, j'achèterai une belle maison.

When I'm rich, I'll buy a nice house.

⇒ For more information on the **Present tense** and the **Future tense**, see pages 71 and 98.

► French, like English, also has conjunctions which have more than one part. Here are the most common:

- **ne ... ni ... ni** neither ... nor

Je n'aime ni les lentilles ni les épinards.

I like neither lentils nor spinach.

❗ Note that the **ne** part of this expression goes just before the verb.

- **ou ... ou, ou bien ... ou bien** either ... or

**Ou il est malade ou il ment.
Ou bien il m'évite ou bien il ne me reconnaît pas.**

Either he's sick or he's lying.

Either he's avoiding me or else he doesn't recognize me.

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

The conjunction **que**

► When **que** is used to join two parts of a sentence, it means *that*.

Il dit qu'il m'aime.

He says that he loves me.

Elle sait que vous êtes là.

She knows that you're here.

Tip

In English you could say both *He says he loves me* and *He says that he loves me*, or *She knows you're here* and *She knows that you're here*. You can **NEVER** leave out **que** in French in the same way.

► **que** is also used when you are comparing two things or two people. In this case, it means *as* or *than*.

Ils n'y vont pas aussi souvent que nous.

They don't go as often as us.

Les melons sont plus chers que les bananes.

Melons are more expensive than bananas.

⇒ For more information on **Comparative adjectives**, see page 34.

► Some words which give you information about when something happens, can also be conjunctions if you put **que** after them. **pendant que** (meaning *while*) is the most common of these.

Christian a téléphoné pendant que Chantal prenait son bain.

Christian phoned while Chantal was in the bath.

❗ Note that when **pendant que** (meaning *while*), **quand** (meaning *when*) and **lorsque** (meaning *when*) are used to talk about something that will happen in the future, the French verb has to be in the future tense even though English uses a verb in the present tense.

Pendant que je serai en France, j'irai les voir.

I'll go and visit them while I'm in France.

⇒ For more information on the **Present tense** and the **Future tense**, see pages 71 and 98.

Grammar Extra!

que can replace another conjunction to avoid having to repeat it.

Quand tu seras plus grand et que tu auras une maison à toi, ...

When you're older and you have a house of your own, ...

Comme il pleut et que je n'ai pas de parapluie, ...

As it's raining and I don't have an umbrella, ...

NUMBERS

1	un (une)
2	deux
3	trois
4	quatre
5	cinq
6	six
7	sept
8	huit
9	neuf
10	dix
11	onze
12	douze
13	treize
14	quatorze
15	quinze
16	seize
17	dix-sept
18	dix-huit
19	dix-neuf
20	vingt
21	vingt et un (une)
22	vingt-deux
30	trente
40	quarante
50	cinquante
60	soixante
70	soixante-dix
71	soixante et onze
72	soixante-douze
80	quatre-vingts
81	quatre-vingt-un (-une)
90	quatre-vingt-dix
91	quatre-vingt-onze
100	cent
101	cent un (une)
300	trois cents
301	trois cent un (une)
1000	mille
2000	deux mille
1,000,000	un million

1st	premier (1 ^{er}), première (1 ^{re})
2nd	deuxième (2 ^e or 2 ^{ème}) or second(e) (2 nd (e))
3rd	troisième (3 ^e or 3 ^{ème})
4th	quatrième (4 ^e or 4 ^{ème})
5th	cinquième (5 ^e or 5 ^{ème})
6th	sixième (6 ^e or 6 ^{ème})
7th	septième (7 ^e or 7 ^{ème})
8th	huitième (8 ^e or 8 ^{ème})
9th	neuvième (9 ^e or 9 ^{ème})
10th	dixième (10 ^e or 10 ^{ème})
11th	onzième (11 ^e or 11 ^{ème})
12th	douzième (12 ^e or 12 ^{ème})
13th	treizième (13 ^e or 13 ^{ème})
14th	quatorzième (14 ^e or 14 ^{ème})
15th	quinzième (15 ^e or 15 ^{ème})
16th	seizième (16 ^e or 16 ^{ème})
17th	dix-septième (17 ^e or 17 ^{ème})
18th	dix-huitième (18 ^e or 18 ^{ème})
19th	dix-neuvième (19 ^e or 19 ^{ème})
20th	vingtième (20 ^e or 20 ^{ème})
21st	vingt et unième (21 ^e or 21 ^{ème})
22nd	vingt-deuxième (22 ^e or 22 ^{ème})
30th	trantième (30 ^e or 30 ^{ème})
100th	centième (100 ^e or 100 ^{ème})
101st	cent unième (101 ^e or 101 ^{ème})
1000th	millième (1000 ^e or 1000 ^{ème})
1/2	un demi
1/3	un tiers
2/3	deux tiers
1/4	un quart
1/5	un cinquième
0.5	zéro virgule cinq (0,5)
3.4	trois virgule quatre (3,4)
10%	dix pour cent
100%	cent pour cent

EXEMPLES

Il habite au dix.
à la page dix-neuf
au chapitre sept
Il habite au cinquième (étage).
Il est arrivé troisième.
échelle au vingt-cinq millièm

EXEMPLES

He lives at number ten.
on page nineteen
in chapter seven
He lives on the fifth floor.
He came in third.
scale one to twenty-five thousand

L'HEURE

Quelle heure est-il?

Il est...

une heure
une heure dix
une heure et quart
une heure et demie
deux heures moins vingt
deux heures moins le quart

À quelle heure?

à minuit

à midi

à une heure (de l'après-midi)

à huit heures (du soir)

à 11h15 or

onze heures quinze

à 20h45 or

vingt heures quarante-cinq

THE TIME

What time is it?

It's...

one o'clock
ten past one
quarter past one
half past one
twenty to two
quarter to two

At what time?

at midnight

at midday, at noon

at one o'clock (in the afternoon)

at eight o'clock (in the evening)

at 11.15 or eleven fifteen

at 20.45 or twenty forty-five

LA DATE

LES JOURS DE LA SEMAINE

lundi

mardi

mercredi

jeudi

vendredi

samedi

dimanche

THE DATE

DAYS OF THE WEEK

Monday

Tuesday

Wednesday

Thursday

Friday

Saturday

Sunday

Quand?

lundi

le lundi

tous les lundis

mardi dernier

vendredi prochain

samedi en huit

samedi en quinze

When?

on Monday

on Mondays

every Monday

last Tuesday

next Friday

a week on Saturday

two weeks on Saturday

[7] Note that days of the week are NOT written with a capital letter in French.

LES MOIS

janvier

février

mars

avril

mai

juin

juillet

août

septembre

octobre

novembre

décembre

MONTHS OF THE YEAR

January

February

March

April

May

June

July

August

September

October

November

December

Quand?

en février

le 1^{er} décembre

le premier décembre

en 1998

en mille neuf cent quatre-

vingt-dix-huit

When?

in February

on December 1st

on December first

in 1998

in nineteen ninety-eight

Quel jour sommes-nous?

Nous sommes le...

lundi 26 février or

lundi vingt-six février

dimanche 1^{er} octobre or

dimanche premier octobre

What day is it?

It's...

Monday 26 February or

Monday twenty-sixth of February

Sunday 1st October or

Sunday the first of October

[7] Note that months of the year are NOT written with a capital letter in French.

VOCABULAIRE

Quand?

aujourd'hui
ce matin
cet après-midi
ce soir

Souvent?

tous les jours
tous les deux jours
une fois par semaine
deux fois par semaine
une fois par mois

Ça s'est passé quand?

le matin
le soir
hier
hier soir
avant-hier
il y a une semaine
il y a quinze jours
l'an dernier or l'année dernière

Ça va se passer quand?

demain
demain matin
après-demain
dans deux jours
dans une semaine
dans quinze jours
le mois prochain
l'an prochain or l'année
prochaine

USEFUL VOCABULARY

When?

today
this morning
this afternoon
this evening

How often?

every day
every other day
once a week
twice a week
once a month

When did it happen?

in the morning
in the evening
yesterday
yesterday evening
the day before yesterday
a week ago
two weeks ago
last year

When is it going to happen?

tomorrow
tomorrow morning
the day after tomorrow
in two days
in a week
in two weeks
next month
next year

SOME COMMON DIFFICULTIES

General problems

- You can't always translate French into English and English into French word for word. While occasionally it is possible to do this, often it is not. For example:

- English phrasal verbs (verbs followed by a preposition or adverb), for example, *to run away*, *to fall down*, are often translated by ONE word in French.

continuer

to go on

tomber

to fall down

rendre

to give back

- ⇒ For more information on *Verbs*, see pages 69–137.

- Sentences which contain a verb and preposition in English, might NOT contain a preposition in French.

payer quelque chose

to pay for something

regarder quelqu'un/quelque chose

to look at somebody/something

écouter quelqu'un/quelque chose

to listen to somebody/something

- Similarly, sentences which contain a verb and preposition in French, might NOT contain a preposition in English.

obéir à quelqu'un/quelque chose

to obey somebody/something

changer de quelque chose

to change something

manquer de quelque chose

to lack something

- The same French preposition may be translated into English in different ways.

parler de quelque chose

to talk about something

sûr de quelque chose

sure of something

voler quelque chose à quelqu'un

to steal something from someone

croire à quelque chose

to believe in something

- ⇒ For more information on *Prepositions*, see page 162.

- A word which is singular in English may not be in French.

les bagages luggage
ses cheveux his/her hair

- Similarly, a word which is singular in French may not be in English.

un short shorts
mon pantalon my trousers

⇒ For more information on **Nouns**, see page 1.

- In English, you can use 's to show who or what something belongs to; in French, you have to use **de**.

la voiture de mon frère my brother's car
la chambre des enfants the children's bedroom

⇒ For more information on the preposition **de**, see page 166.

Specific problems

1 -ing

- The **-ing** ending in English is translated in a number of different ways in French:

- to be ...-ing is translated by a verb consisting of one word.

Il part demain. He's leaving tomorrow.

Je lisais un roman. I was reading a book.

⇒ For more information on **Verbs**, see pages 69–137.

- ❗ Note that when you are talking about somebody's or something's physical position, you use a **past participle**.

Elle est assise là-bas. She's sitting over there.

Il était couché par terre. He was lying on the ground.

⇒ For more information on the **Past participle**, see page 111.

- **-ing** can also be translated by:

- an infinitive

J'aime aller au cinéma. I like going to the cinema.

Arrêtez de vous disputer! Stop arguing!

Avant de partir... Before leaving...

⇒ For more information on **Infinitives**, see page 133.

- a present participle

Étant plus timide que moi, elle... Being shyer than me, she...

⇒ For more information on the **Present participle**, see page 125.

- a noun

Le ski me maintient en forme. Skiing keeps me fit.

⇒ For more information on **Nouns**, see page 1.

2 to be

- The verb **to be** is generally translated by **être**.

Il est tard. It's late.

Ce n'est pas possible! It's not possible!

- When you are talking about the physical position of something, **se trouver** may be used.

Où se trouve la gare? Where's the station?

- In certain set phrases which describe how you are feeling or a state you are in, the verb **avoir** is used.

avoir chaud to be warm

avoir froid to be cold

avoir faim to be hungry

avoir soif to be thirsty

avoir peur to be afraid

avoir tort to be wrong

avoir raison to be right

- When you are describing what the weather is like, use the verb **faire**.

Quel temps fait-il? What's the weather like?

Il fait beau. It's lovely.

Il fait mauvais. It's miserable.

Il fait du vent. It's windy.

- When you are talking about someone's age, use the verb **avoir**.

Quel âge as-tu? How old are you?

J'ai quinze ans. I'm fifteen.

- When talking about your health, use the verb **aller**.

Comment allez-vous? How are you?

Je vais très bien. I'm very well.

3 **it is, it's**

- *it is* and *it's* are usually translated by **il est** or **elle est** when referring to a noun.

'Où est mon parapluie?' – Where's my umbrella? **Il's** there, in
 'Il est là, dans le coin.' the corner.
 Descends la valise si **elle n'est** Bring the case down if it **isn't** too
 pas trop lourde. heavy.

- When you are talking about the time, use **il est**.

'Quelle heure est-il?' – 'Il est What time **is it?** – **It's** half past
 sept heures et demie.' seven.

- When you are describing what the weather is like, use the verb **faire**.

Il fait beau. It's lovely.
Il fait mauvais. It's miserable.
Il fait du vent. It's windy.

- If you want to say, for example, *it is difficult to do something* or *it is easy to do something*, use **il est**.

Il est difficile de répondre à It is difficult to answer this question.
 cette question.

- In **ALL** other phrases and constructions, use **c'est**.

C'est moi qui ne l'aime pas. It's me who doesn't like him.
C'est Charles qui l'a dit. It's Charles who said so.
C'est ici que je les ai achetés. It's here that I bought them.
C'est parce que la poste est It's because the post office is closed
 fermée que... that...

4 **there is, there are**

- Both *there is* and *there are* are translated by **il y a**.

Il y a quelqu'un à la porte. There **is** someone at the door.
Il y a cinq livres sur la table. There **are** five books on the table.

5 **can, to be able**

- If you want to talk about someone's physical ability to do something, use **pouvoir**.

Pouvez-vous faire dix Can you walk ten kilometres?
 kilomètres à pied?

- If you want to say that *you know how to do something*, use **savoir**.

Elle ne sait pas nager. She **can't** swim.

- When *can* is used with verbs to do with what you can see or hear, you do **NOT** use **pouvoir** in French.

Je ne vois rien. I **can't see** anything.
Il les entendait. He **could hear** them.

6 **to**

- The preposition *to* is generally translated by **à**.

Donne le livre à Patrick. Give the book **to** Patrick.

- ➡ For more information on the preposition **à**, see page 163.

- When you are talking about the time, use **moins**.

dix heures moins cinq five **to** ten
à sept heures moins le quart at a quarter **to** seven

- If you want to say (*in order*) *to*, use **pour**.

Je l'ai fait pour vous aider. I did it **to** help you.
Il va en ville pour acheter un He's going into town **to** buy a
 cadeau. present.

THE ALPHABET

- The French alphabet is pronounced differently from the way it is pronounced in English. Use the list below to help you sound out the letters.

A, a	[ɑ]	(ah)	like 'a' in 'la'
B, b	[be]	(bay)	
C, c	[se]	(say)	
D, d	[de]	(day)	
E, e	[ə]	(uh)	like 'e' in 'le'
F, f	[ɛf]	(eff)	
G, g	[ʒe]	(jay)	
H, h	[aʃ]	(ash)	
I, i	[i]	(ee)	
J, j	[ʒi]	(jee)	
K, k	[ka]	(ka)	
L, l	[ɛl]	(ell)	
M, m	[ɛm]	(emm)	
N, n	[ɛn]	(enn)	
O, o	[o]	(oh)	
P, p	[pe]	(pay)	
Q, q	[ky]	(ku)	like 'u' in 'une'
R, r	[ɛr]	(air)	
S, s	[ɛs]	(ess)	
T, t	[te]	(tay)	
U, u	[y]	(u)	like 'u' in 'une'
V, v	[ve]	(vay)	
W, w	[dublave]	(doobla-vay)	
X, x	[iks]	(eex)	
Y, y	[igrek]	(ee-grek)	
Z, z	[zed]	(zed)	

For further explanation of grammatical terms, please see pages viii-xii.

MAIN INDEX

1, 2, 3, 6 verbs	79, 80, 96
aux	14, 55, 63, 163, 164
auxquelles	63
auxquels	63
avant	159
avec	16, 171
avoir	16, 48, 56, 70, 87, 111, 113, 137, 160, 163, 171, 180
avoir: conditional	110
avoir: future tense	103
avoir: imperative	87
avoir: impersonal verbs	127
avoir: past participle	118
avoir: present tense	82
avoir: pluperfect tense	119
avoir:	
perfect tense	111, 113, 118
avoir: present participle	126
avoir: subjunctive	132
be	123
beau	20, 23, 29, 32
beaucoup (de)	156, 159
bel	29
belle	29
bien	36, 153, 156
body: parts of	17, 40, 165
bon	20, 23, 32, 153
c'	see ce
c'	see ce
ça	66
car	186
ce	37, 65
ceci	66
cela	66
celle	66
celle-ci	67
celle-là	67
celles	66
celles-ci	67
celles-là	67
celui	66
celui-ci	67
celui-là	67
ces	37
ce sont	21, 52, 65
c'est	21, 52, 65
cet	37
c'était	65
cette	37
ceux	66
ceux-ci	67
ceux-là	67
chacun	51, 60
chaque	41
cher	32, 153
chez	171
-ci	37, 67
clothing	11, 164
colours: adjectives	31, 32
combien (de)	146, 159
comme	186
comment	146
comparative adjectives	34
comparative adverbs	155
comparisons	34, 52
comparisons:	
pronouns used in	52
compound nouns	11, 33
concrete nouns	16
conditional	105
conditional: irregular verbs	109
conditional: reflexive verbs	109
conjugations	69
conjugations: first	72
conjugations: second	74
conjugations: third	76
conjunctions	129, 184
contre	172
countries	17, 163, 164, 169
court	32
-d	105
dans	57, 169, 172
dates	18, 191
days of the week	5, 18, 190
de	15, 20, 35, 56, 133, 135, 140, 159, 164, 166, 171, 180, 183
de: with le, la, l' and les	15, 22, 55, 56, 63
definite article	12, 13, 16, 35
demandeur	179
demonstrative adjectives	37
demonstrative pronouns	65
depuis	159, 172
dernier	33
derrière	159, 173
des	15, 19, 20, 22, 56, 166
descendre	113, 114, 115, 120, 126
describing words	see adjectives
desquelles	63
desquels	63
devant	159, 173
devenir	113
devoir	102, 118, 132, 133
dire	118, 132
direct object	114, 116, 118, 135, 181
direct object pronouns	47, 58, 59
direct questions	151
doing words	see verbs
dommage:	
il est dommage que	128
donc	186
donner	72, 85, 93, 99, 106, 112, 119, 126, 130
dont	64, 67
droit	153
du	15, 22, 56, 166
duquel	63
dur	154
each	41, 60
each other	91
écouter	135
either ... or	186
elle	43, 44, 51, 66, 69
elle-même	52
elles	43, 45, 51, 69
elles-mêmes	52
emphasis	52, 66
emphatic pronouns	51
en	17, 18, 56, 59, 85, 125, 126, 168, 172

en train de 136
 endings: adjectives 27
 endings: nouns 2, 3, 7, 8, 9
 endings: verbs 69, 72, 74, 76, 93, 94, 98, 105, 114
entendre 135
entre 173
entrer 113
 -er 34, 155
 -er verbs 72, 85, 93, 105, 112, 119, 123, 126, 130
 -er verbs: spelling changes 78, 79, 80, 81, 95, 99, 107
espérer 81, 134
essayer 80, 101, 108
 -est 34, 155
est-ce que 143, 144
et 33, 184
être 48, 65, 70, 71, 87, 92, 111, 160, 171
être: conditional 110
être: future tense 103
être: imperfect tense 97
être: impersonal verbs 127
être: passive 123
être: past participle 118
être: present tense 82
être: pluperfect tense 119
être: perfect tense 111, 113, 117, 118, 119
être: present participle 126
être: subjunctive 132
eux 51
eux-mêmes 52
 every 41
 everyone 60, 127
 everything 61
faire 70, 82, 103, 110, 118, 127, 128, 132, 134, 137, 138
falloir 103, 127, 134
 feminine adjectives 27, 29, 34, 35
 feminine nouns 1, 13, 17, 19, 22, 44, 45
few: a few 41
finir 74, 85, 94, 99, 106, 113, 119, 126, 131
fol 29
folle 29
fort 154
fou 29
from 166
from ... to 164, 167
future tense 71, 98, 174, 186
 future tense: irregular verbs 102
 future tense: reflexive verbs 102
geler 79, 100, 107, 128
 gender 1, 2, 3
gentil 153
gentiment 153
grand 32
gros 32
habiter 182
haut 32
he 43, 51, 69
hein 150
her 39, 47, 51
hers 54
herself 52
him 47, 51

himself 52
his 39, 54
how 146
how much/many 146
I 43, 51
il 43, 44, 66, 69, 127
il est 55, 128
il fait 128
il faut (que) 102, 118, 128, 129, 130
il manque 128
il paraît que 128
il pleut 45, 103, 118
il reste 128
il semble que 128
il vaut mieux (que) 129
il y a 56, 128
ils 43, 45, 69
imperative 48, 85
 imperative: irregular verbs 87
 imperative: word order 86
imperfect tense 92, 119, 160
 imperfect tense:
 irregular verbs 97
 imperfect tense:
 reflexive verbs 96
impersonal verbs 127
in 35, 163, 168, 169
 -ing 125, 137, 162, 171, 175
indefinite adjectives 41
indefinite articles 12, 19
 indefinite article:
 in negative sentences 20
 indefinite article: use of 21
indefinite pronouns 60
 indirect object 122, 178
 indirect object pronouns 58, 59
 indirect questions 151
 infinitives 48, 65, 72, 74, 76, 88, 105, 111, 129, 130, 131, 137, 140
 infinitives: after adjectives 137
 infinitives:
 after another verb 98, 133
 infinitives:
 in order to 175
 instructions 137
invariable adjectives 31
 inversion 143
 invert 143
 -ir verbs 74, 84, 85, 94, 105, 112, 115, 119, 120, 123, 126
 irregular comparative and superlative adjectives 35
 irregular comparative and superlative adverbs 156
 irregular feminine adjectives 29
 irregular verbs: conditional 109
 irregular verbs: future tense 102
 irregular verbs: imperative 87
 irregular verbs:
 imperfect tense 97
 irregular verbs: passive 124
 irregular verbs: perfect tense 118
 irregular verbs:
 pluperfect tense 121
 irregular verbs:
 present participles 126

irregular verbs:
 present tense 82, 84
 irregular verbs: subjunctive 132
it 43, 44, 47, 66, 127
its 39
itself 52
je see **je** 157
je 43, 69
jeter 79, 100, 107
jeune 32
jobs 21
joli 32
jouer 179, 180
jusque 173
l' see **le, la** 13, 47
la 38, 67
-là 38, 67
la leur 54
la mienne 54
la moins 35
la nôtre 54
la plus 34
la sienne 54
la tienne 54
la vôtre 54
lancer 78, 95, 126
 languages 5, 17, 169
laquelle 63, 149
le 13, 47, 48
le leur 54
le meilleur 36
le mien 54
le mieux 36, 156
le moindre 36
le moins 35, 156
le nôtre 54
le pire 36
le pis 156
le plus 34, 156
le plus mal 156
le sien 54
le tien 54
le vôtre 54
least 35, 155
lent 153
lentement 153
lequel 63, 149
les 13, 47
les leurs 54
les miennes 54
les miens 54
les moins 35
les nôtres 54
les plus 34
les siennes 54
les siens 54
les tiennes 54
les tiens 54
les vôtres 54
lesquelles 63, 149
lesquels 63, 149
less 34
let's 85
leur 39, 49
leurs 39
lever 80, 101, 108
-ll 98
long 32
lorsque 186

lui 49, 51
lui-même 52
m' see **me** 39
ma 184
mais 184
mal 153, 156
manger 78, 96, 126, 127
manquer 128, 179
 masculine adjectives 25, 27, 28, 29, 30
 masculine and feminine forms
 of words 7
 masculine nouns 1, 13, 19, 22, 44, 45
mauvais 32, 153, 154
me 47, 49, 89
me 47, 51
 measurements 175
meilleur 32, 36, 153
même 41, 52
mes 39
mettre 118
mieux 36, 153
mine 54
moi 48, 51
moi-même 52
moins 36
mon 34, 155
monter 113, 114
months 5, 169
more 34
most 34, 153
mourir 113
my 39
myself 52
n' see **ne** 113
naître 113
 naming words see **nouns** 8
 nasal vowels 32
 nationalities: adjectives 32
ne 139
ne ... jamais 20, 23, 138
ne ... ni ... ni 186
ne ... pas 20, 23, 138, 144
ne ... personne 60, 138
ne ... plus 138
ne ... rien 61, 138
nécessaire: il est 128
nécessaire que 21, 23, 138
 negatives 20
 negatives: **de** after 139
 negatives: word order 128
neiger 186
neither ... nor 150
n'est-ce pas 80, 101, 108
nettoyer 138
never 138
no longer 138
no more 138
no one 60, 138
nobody 60, 138
non 140, 150
non plus 139
nos 39
not 138
nothing 60, 138
notre 39
nouns 1, 13
 nouns: abstract 16

nouns: compounds 11, 33
 nouns: concrete 16
 nouns: endings 2, 3, 7, 8, 9
 nouns: English, used in French 5
 nouns: feminine 1, 2, 3, 5, 13, 17, 19, 22, 44, 45
 nouns: masculine 1, 2, 3, 5, 13, 19, 22, 44, 45
 nouns: plural 1, 9, 14, 19, 23
 nouns: singular 1
nous 43, 47, 49, 51, 69, 85, 89, 91
nous-mêmes 52
nouveau 29, 32
nouvel 29
nouvelle 29
numbers 75, 190
 object 122, 147
 object pronouns 47, 58, 59
 object pronouns: word order 86
œil 11
of 167, 175
on 43, 45, 51, 69, 124
on 164
one 43, 69
one another 91
one's 39
oneself 51, 52
 orders and instructions 48, 50, 85
 orders and instructions:
 irregular verbs 87
 orders and instructions:
 word order 50, 57, 86, 90
other 41
ou 184
où 146, 184
ou ... ou 186
ou bien ... ou bien 186
oui 144, 184
our 39
ours 51, 52
ourselves 51, 52
par 173
paraître 127
parce que 184
parler 17
 participles: past 44, 48, 111, 114, 119, 120, 123, 171
 participles: present 55, 125, 170
partir 84, 113, 115, 120, 126
partitive article 12, 22, 56
 parts of the body 17, 40, 165
pas 141
passive 45, 122
 passive: irregular verbs 124
past participles 44, 48, 111, 114, 119, 120, 123, 171
 past participles:
 irregular verbs 118
payer 80, 101, 108
peler 79, 100, 107
pendant (que) 174, 187
perfect tense 111, 139, 143, 160, 174
 perfect tense: irregular verbs 118
 perfect tense: reflexive verbs 117
personal pronouns 42
personne 60, 168
personne de 61
peser 80, 101

petit 20, 23, 32, 153
peu 153, 156, 158
pire 36, 153
pis 153
plaire 179
pleuvoir 103, 128
pluperfect tense 119, 139
 pluperfect tense:
 irregular verbs 120
 pluperfect tense:
 reflexive verbs 120
plural 9, 11
plus 34, 155
 possession 67, 167
possessive adjectives 39
possessive pronouns 54
possible: il est possible que 128
pour 174
pourquoi 146
pouvoir 48, 102, 118, 132, 133
préférer 81, 134
premier 32
prendre 118, 132
prepositions 47, 51, 67, 126, 147, 162
 prepositions: after adjectives 183
 prepositions: after verbs 178
 prepositions:
 followed by infinitive 137
present participles 55, 125, 170
 present participles:
 irregular verbs 126
present tense 71, 72, 74, 76, 98, 160, 186
 present tense: irregular verbs 82
 present tense: reflexive verbs 89
 present tense:
 spelling changes 78
 prices and rates 18, 165
prochain 33
 professions 21, 172
pronouns 42, 140
 pronouns:
 reflexive 89, 96, 102, 109
 pronouns: word order 50, 86
 pronunciation 7, 10, 14, 19, 28, 30, 39, 57, 78, 79, 80, 85, 100, 107, 144
propre 32
que see **que** 146, 186
quand 22, 168
 quantities 34, 62, 67, 147, 187
que 21, 148, 149
quel 148, 149
quelle 148, 149
quelles 148, 149
quelque chose 60, 168
quelque chose de 61
quelqu'un 60, 168
quelqu'un de 61
quels 148, 149
qu'est-ce que 148
qu'est-ce qui 148
 question words 65, 144, 146
questions 21, 142
 questions: indirect 151
qui 62, 67, 147
qui est-ce que/qui 148
quoi 146, 147
rapide 159

-re verbs 76, 85, 105, 112, 115, 119, 120, 123, 126, 131
 reflexive pronouns 89, 96, 102, 109
 reflexive pronouns: word order 90
 reflexive verbs 88, 124
 reflexive verbs: present tense 89
 reflexive verbs: conditional 109
 reflexive verbs: future tense 102
 reflexive verbs:
 imperfect tense 96
 reflexive verbs:
 orders and instructions 90
 reflexive verbs: perfect tense 117
 reflexive verbs:
 pluperfect tense 120
 regarder 135
 regular verbs 69
 régler 81
 relative pronouns 62
 rester 113, 128
 rien 60, 168
 rien de 61
 -s 67
 s' see **se**, **si**
 sa 39
 same 41
 sans 16, 175
 s'asseoir 90
 sauf 175
 savoir 87, 102, 118, 126, 132, 100
 school subjects 17
 se 88, 89, 91
 seasons 5, 18, 169
 se laver 90, 102, 109, 117
 sembler 128
 se tromper de 181
 ses 39
 she 43, 51, 69
 si 144, 184
 singular adjectives 25, 27, 30
 singular nouns 1
 soi 51
 soi-même 52
 some 12, 19, 20, 22, 24, 41
 somebody 60
 someone 45, 60
 something 60
 son 39
 sortir 113, 114
 sous 175
 spelling changes in -er verbs 78, 79, 80, 81, 95, 99, 107
 sports 17
 stems 69, 72, 74, 76, 93, 94, 98, 105
 stressed pronouns
 see **emphatic pronouns**
 subject 122, 147
 subject pronouns 43
 subjunctive 129
 subjunctive: irregular verbs 132
 suggestions 105
 superlative adjectives 34, 167
 superlative adverbs 155
 sur 57, 175
 t' see **te**
 ta 39

te 47, 49, 89
 tenir 84, 102, 118
 tense 69
 tenses: future 71, 98
 tenses: imperfect 92
 tenses: perfect 111
 tenses: pluperfect 119
 tenses: present 71, 72, 74, 76, 98
 tes 39
 than 34, 187
 that 37, 62, 66, 67
 that one/those ones 67
 the 12
 the one 66
 their 39
 theirs 54
 them 47, 51
 themselves 52
 there 57, 127
 these 37, 67
 they 43, 45, 51, 69
 this 37, 66, 67
 this one/these ones 67
 those 37, 67
 time 45, 169, 172
 to 163, 168
 toi 51
 toi-même 52
 tomber 113, 115, 120
 ton 39
 tous 61, 152
 tout 41, 61, 152
 toute 152
 toutes 61, 152
 tout le monde 51
 towns and cities 163, 164, 169
 transport 165, 169
 trop (de) 159
 tu 40, 43, 69, 85
 un 19
 une 19
 un peu 158
 us 47, 51
 valoir mieux 128, 134
 venir 102, 113, 118, 132, 135
 venir de 136
 verbs 69
 verbs: 1, 2, 3, 6 type 79, 80, 96
 verbs: active 122
 verbs: conditional 105
 verbs: endings 69, 72, 74, 76, 93, 94, 98, 105, 114
 verbs: followed by **a** 135
 verbs:
 followed by an infinitive 133
 verbs: followed by **de** 135
 verbs: infinitives 48, 65, 72, 74, 76, 88, 105, 111, 129, 130, 131, 137, 140
 verbs: plural 69
 verbs: prepositions after 135, 137
 verbs: regular 69
 verbs: singular 69
 verbs: stems 69, 72, 74, 76, 93, 94, 98, 105
 vieil 29
 vieille 29
 vieux 29, 32
 vite 159
 voice: in questions 142, 144

voici 176
 voilà 176
 voir 102, 118, 135
 vos 39
 votre 39
 vouloir 48, 87, 102, 118, 132, 133
 vous 40, 43, 47, 49, 51, 69, 85, 89, 91
 vous-même 52
 vous-mêmes 52
 we 43, 45, 51, 69
 weather 45
 weights and measures 5
 what 146, 148
 what (a) ...! 21
 when 146
 where 146
 which 62, 63, 149
 which one(s) 149
 who 62, 147
 whom 62, 147
 whose 64, 148
 why 146
 with 171
 within 169
 will 98
 word order: with adverbs 160
 word order:
 in indirect questions 151
 word order: in negatives 139
 word order:
 in orders and instructions 86
 word order:
 in questions 143, 144
 word order: with adjectives 32
 word order: with **en** and **y** 57, 59
 word order:
 with object pronouns 48, 50, 59
 word order:
 with reflexive pronouns 90
 would 108
 y 57, 59, 85
 years 169
 yes 144
 yeux 11
 you 43, 46, 47, 51, 69
 your 39
 yours 54
 yourself 51, 52
 yourselves 52

VERB TABLES

Introduction

The **Verb Tables** in the following section contain 93 tables of French verbs (some regular and some irregular) in alphabetical order. Each table shows you the following forms: **Present**, **Perfect**, **Future**, **Subjunctive**, **Imperfect**, **Conditional**, **Imperative** and the **Present** and **Past Participles**. For more information on these tenses, how they are formed, when they are used and so on, you should look at the section on **Verbs** in the main text on pages 69–137.

In order to help you use the verbs shown in Verb Tables correctly, there are also a number of example phrases at the bottom of each page to show the verb as it is used in context.

In French there are both **regular** verbs (their forms follow the normal rules) and **irregular** verbs (their forms do not follow the normal rules). The regular verbs in these tables are:

donner (regular -er verb, Verb Table 29)

finir (regular -ir verb, Verb Table 39)

attendre (regular -re verb, Verb Table 8)

The irregular verbs are shown in full.

The **Verb Index** at the end of this section contains over 2000 verbs, each of which is cross-referred to one of the verbs given in the Verb Tables. The table shows the patterns that the verb listed in the index follows.

► **acheter** (to buy)**PRESENT**

j'	achète
tu	achètes
il/elle/on	achète
nous	achetons
vous	achetez
ils/elles	achètent

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

j'	achète
tu	achètes
il/elle/on	achète
nous	achetions
vous	achetiez
ils/elles	achètent

PERFECT

j'	ai acheté
tu	as acheté
il/elle/on	a acheté
nous	avons acheté
vous	avez acheté
ils/elles	ont acheté

IMPERFECT

j'	achetais
tu	achetais
il/elle/on	achetait
nous	achetions
vous	achetiez
ils/elles	achetaient

FUTURE

j'	achèterai
tu	achèteras
il/elle/on	achètera
nous	achèterons
vous	achèterez
ils/elles	achèteront

CONDITIONAL

j'	achèterais
tu	achèterais
il/elle/on	achèterait
nous	achèterions
vous	achèteriez
ils/elles	achèteraient

IMPERATIVE

achète / achetons / achetez

PAST PARTICIPLE

acheté

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

achetant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

J'ai acheté des gâteaux à la pâtisserie. I bought some cakes at the cake shop.
Qu'est-ce que tu lui as acheté pour son anniversaire? What did you buy him for his birthday?

Je n'achète jamais de chips. I never buy crisps.

► **acquérir** (to acquire)**PRESENT**

j'	acquiers
tu	acquiers
il/elle/on	acquiert
nous	acquérons
vous	acquérez
ils/elles	acquièrent

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

j'	acquière
tu	acquières
il/elle/on	acquière
nous	acquérions
vous	acquériez
ils/elles	acquièrent

PERFECT

j'	ai acquis
tu	as acquis
il/elle/on	a acquis
nous	avons acquis
vous	avez acquis
ils/elles	ont acquis

IMPERFECT

j'	acquérais
tu	acquérais
il/elle/on	acquérait
nous	acquérions
vous	acquériez
ils/elles	acquéraient

FUTURE

j'	acquerrai
tu	acquerras
il/elle/on	acquerra
nous	acquerrons
vous	acquerez
ils/elles	acquerront

CONDITIONAL

j'	acquerrais
tu	acquerrais
il/elle/on	acquerrait
nous	acquerrions
vous	acqueriez
ils/elles	acquerraient

IMPERATIVE

acquiers / acquérons / acquérez

PAST PARTICIPLE

acquis

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

acquérant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Elle a acquis la nationalité française en 2003. She acquired French nationality in 2003.

► **aller** (to go)**PRESENT**

je	vais
tu	vas
il/elle/on	va
nous	allons
vous	allez
ils/elles	vont

PERFECT

je	suis allé(e)
tu	es allé(e)
il/elle/on	est allé(e)
nous	sommes allé(e)s
vous	êtes allé(e)s
ils/elles	sont allé(e)s

FUTURE

j'	irai
tu	iras
il/elle/on	ira
nous	irons
vous	irez
ils/elles	iront

IMPERATIVE

va / allons / allez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

allant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Vous allez au cinéma? Are you going to the cinema?

Je suis allé à Londres. I went to London.

Est-ce que tu es déjà allé en Allemagne? Have you ever been to Germany?

► **appeler** (to call)**PRESENT**

j'	appelle
tu	appelles
il/elle/on	appelle
nous	appelons
vous	appelez
ils/elles	appellent

PERFECT

j'	ai appelé
tu	as appelé
il/elle/on	a appelé
nous	avons appelé
vous	avez appelé
ils/elles	ont appelé

FUTURE

j'	appellerai
tu	appelleras
il/elle/on	appellera
nous	appellerons
vous	appellerez
ils/elles	appelleront

IMPERATIVE

appelle / appelons / appelez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

appelant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Elle a appelé le médecin. She called the doctor.

J'ai appelé Richard à Londres. I called Richard in London.

Comment tu t'appelles? What's your name?

➡ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb *s'appeler*.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

j'	aille
tu	ailles
il/elle/on	aille
nous	allions
vous	alliez
ils/elles	aillent

IMPERFECT

j'	allais
tu	allais
il/elle/on	allait
nous	allions
vous	alliez
ils/elles	allaient

CONDITIONAL

j'	irais
tu	irais
il/elle/on	irait
nous	irions
vous	iriez
ils/elles	iraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

allé

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

j'	appelle
tu	appelles
il/elle/on	appelle
nous	appelions
vous	appeliez
ils/elles	appellent

IMPERFECT

j'	appelais
tu	appelais
il/elle/on	appelait
nous	appelions
vous	appeliez
ils/elles	appelaient

CONDITIONAL

j'	appellerais
tu	appellerais
il/elle/on	appellerait
nous	appellerions
vous	appelleriez
ils/elles	appelleraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

appelé

► **arriver** (to arrive)**PRESENT**

j'	arrive
tu	arrives
il/elle/on	arrive
nous	arrivons
vous	arrivez
ils/elles	arrivent

PERFECT

je	suis arrivé(e)
tu	es arrivé(e)
il/elle/on	est arrivé(e)
nous	sommes arrivé(e)s
vous	êtes arrivé(e)s
ils/elles	sont arrivé(e)s

FUTURE

j'	arriverai
tu	arriveras
il/elle/on	arrivera
nous	arriverons
vous	arriverez
ils/elles	arriveront

IMPERATIVE

arrive / arrivons / arrivez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

arrivant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

J'arrive à l'école à huit heures. I arrive at school at 8 o'clock.
Le prof n'est pas encore arrivé. The teacher hasn't arrived yet.
Qu'est-ce qui est arrivé à Aurélie? What happened to Aurélie?

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

j'	arrive
tu	arrives
il/elle/on	arrive
nous	arrivions
vous	arriviez
ils/elles	arrivent

IMPERFECT

j'	arrivais
tu	arrivais
il/elle/on	arrivait
nous	arrivions
vous	arriviez
ils/elles	arrivaient

CONDITIONAL

j'	arriverais
tu	arriverais
il/elle/on	arriverait
nous	arriverions
vous	arriveriez
ils/elles	arriveraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

arrivé

► **s'asseoir** (to sit down)**PRESENT**

je	m'assieds/m'assois
tu	t'assieds/t'assois
il/elle/on	s'assied/s'assoit
nous	nous asseyons/nous assoyons
vous	vous asseyez/vous assoyez
ils/elles	s'asseyent/s'assoient

PERFECT

je	me suis assis(e)
tu	t'es assis(e)
il/elle/on	s'est assis(e)
nous	nous sommes assis(es)
vous	vous êtes assis(e(s))
ils/elles	se sont assis(es)

FUTURE

je	m'assiérai
tu	t'assiéras
il/elle/on	s'assiéra
nous	nous assiérons
vous	vous assiérez
ils/elles	s'assièront

IMPERATIVE

assieds-toi / asseyons-nous / asseyez-vous

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

s'asseyant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Assieds-toi, Nicole. Sit down Nicole.
Asseyez-vous, les enfants. Sit down children.
Je peux m'asseoir? May I sit down?
Je me suis assise sur un chewing-gum! I've sat on some chewing gum!

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	m'asseye
tu	t'asseyes
il/elle/on	s'asseye
nous	nous asseyions
vous	vous asseyiez
ils/elles	s'asseyent

IMPERFECT

je	m'asseyais
tu	t'asseyais
il/elle/on	s'asseyait
nous	nous asseyions
vous	vous asseyiez
ils/elles	s'asseyaient

CONDITIONAL

je	m'assiérais
tu	t'assiérais
il/elle/on	s'assièrait
nous	nous assiérions
vous	vous assiériez
ils/elles	s'assièraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

assis

► **attendre** (to wait)**PRESENT**

j'	attends
tu	attends
il/elle/on	attend
nous	attendons
vous	attendez
ils/elles	attendent

PERFECT

j'	ai attendu
tu	as attendu
il/elle/on	a attendu
nous	avons attendu
vous	avez attendu
ils/elles	ont attendu

FUTURE

j'	attendrai
tu	attendras
il/elle/on	attendra
nous	attendrons
vous	attendrez
ils/elles	attendront

IMPERATIVE

attends / attendons / attendez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

attendant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

j'	attende
tu	attendes
il/elle/on	attende
nous	attendions
vous	attendiez
ils/elles	attendent

IMPERFECT

j'	attendais
tu	attendais
il/elle/on	attendait
nous	attendions
vous	attendiez
ils/elles	attendaient

CONDITIONAL

j'	attendrais
tu	attendrais
il/elle/on	attendrait
nous	attendrions
vous	attendriez
ils/elles	attendraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

attendu

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Attends-moi!* Wait for me!*Tu attends depuis longtemps?* Have you been waiting long?*Je l'ai attendu à la poste.* I waited for him at the post office.*Je m'attends à ce qu'il soit en retard.* I expect he'll be late.➡ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb *s'attendre*.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

► **avoir** (to have)**PRESENT**

j'	ai
tu	as
il/elle/on	a
nous	avons
vous	avez
ils/elles	ont

PERFECT

j'	ai eu
tu	as eu
il/elle/on	a eu
nous	avons eu
vous	avez eu
ils/elles	ont eu

FUTURE

j'	aurai
tu	auras
il/elle/on	aura
nous	aurons
vous	aurez
ils/elles	auront

IMPERATIVE

aie / ayons / ayez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

ayant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

j'	aie
tu	aies
il/elle/on	ait
nous	ayons
vous	ayez
ils/elles	aient

IMPERFECT

j'	avais
tu	avais
il/elle/on	avait
nous	avions
vous	aviez
ils/elles	avaient

CONDITIONAL

j'	aurais
tu	aurais
il/elle/on	aurait
nous	aurions
vous	auriez
ils/elles	auraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

eu

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Il a les yeux bleus.* He's got blue eyes.*Quel âge as-tu?* How old are you?*Il a eu un accident.* He's had an accident.*J'avais faim.* I was hungry.*Il y a beaucoup de monde.* There are lots of people.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

► **battre** (to beat)**PRESENT**

je	bats
tu	bats
il/elle/on	bat
nous	battons
vous	battez
ils/elles	battent

PERFECT

j'	ai battu
tu	as battu
il/elle/on	a battu
nous	avons battu
vous	avez battu
ils/elles	ont battu

FUTURE

je	battrai
tu	battras
il/elle/on	battrà
nous	battrons
vous	battrez
ils/elles	battront

IMPERATIVE

bats / battons / battez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

battant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

On les **a battus** deux à un. We beat them 2-1.
 J'ai le cœur qui **bat**! My heart's beating (fast)!
 Arrêtez de **vous battre**! Stop fighting!

➡ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb **se battre**.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	batte
tu	battes
il/elle/on	batte
nous	battions
vous	battiez
ils/elles	battent

IMPERFECT

je	battais
tu	battais
il/elle/on	battait
nous	battions
vous	battiez
ils/elles	battaient

CONDITIONAL

je	battrais
tu	battrais
il/elle/on	battrait
nous	battrions
vous	battriez
ils/elles	battraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

battu

► **boire** (to drink)**PRESENT**

je	bois
tu	bois
il/elle/on	boit
nous	buvons
vous	buvez
ils/elles	boivent

PERFECT

j'	ai bu
tu	as bu
il/elle/on	a bu
nous	avons bu
vous	avez bu
ils/elles	ont bu

FUTURE

je	boirai
tu	boiras
il/elle/on	boira
nous	boirons
vous	boirez
ils/elles	boiront

IMPERATIVE

bois / buvons / buvez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

buvant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Qu'est-ce que tu veux **boire**? What would you like to drink?
 Il ne **boit** jamais d'alcool. He never drinks alcohol.
 J'**ai bu** un litre d'eau. I drank a litre of water.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	boive
tu	boives
il/elle/on	boive
nous	buvions
vous	buviez
ils/elles	boivent

IMPERFECT

je	buvais
tu	buvais
il/elle/on	buvait
nous	buvions
vous	buviez
ils/elles	buvaient

CONDITIONAL

je	boirais
tu	boirais
il/elle/on	boirait
nous	boirions
vous	boiriez
ils/elles	boiraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

bu

► **bouillir** (to boil)**PRESENT**

je	bous
tu	bous
il/elle/on	bout
nous	bouillons
vous	bouillez
ils/elles	bouillent

PERFECT

j'	ai bouilli
tu	as bouilli
il/elle/on	a bouilli
nous	avons bouilli
vous	avez bouilli
ils/elles	ont bouilli

FUTURE

je	bouillirai
tu	bouilliras
il/elle/on	bouillira
nous	bouillirons
vous	bouillirez
ils/elles	bouilliront

IMPERATIVE

bous / bouillons / bouillez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

bouillant

EXAMPLE PHRASESL'eau **bout**. The water's boiling.Tu peux mettre de l'eau à **bouillir**? Can you boil some water?**PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE**

je	bouille
tu	bouilles
il/elle/on	bouille
nous	bouillions
vous	bouilliez
ils/elles	bouillent

IMPERFECT

je	bouillais
tu	bouillais
il/elle/on	bouillait
nous	bouillions
vous	bouilliez
ils/elles	bouillaient

CONDITIONAL

je	bouillirais
tu	bouillirais
il/elle/on	bouillirait
nous	bouillirions
vous	bouilliriez
ils/elles	bouilliraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

bouilli

► **commencer** (to begin)**PRESENT**

je	commence
tu	commences
il/elle/on	commence
nous	commençons
vous	commencez
ils/elles	commencent

PERFECT

j'	ai commencé
tu	as commencé
il/elle/on	a commencé
nous	avons commencé
vous	avez commencé
ils/elles	ont commencé

FUTURE

je	commencerais
tu	commenceras
il/elle/on	commencera
nous	commencerons
vous	commencerez
ils/elles	commenceront

IMPERATIVE

commence / commençons / commencez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

commençant

EXAMPLE PHRASESIl **a commencé** à pleuvoir. It started to rain.Les cours **commencent** à neuf heures. Lessons start at 9 o'clock.Tu **as déjà commencé** de réviser pour les examens? Have you started revising for the exams?**PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE**

je	commence
tu	commences
il/elle/on	commence
nous	commencions
vous	commenciez
ils/elles	commencent

IMPERFECT

je	commençais
tu	commençais
il/elle/on	commençait
nous	commencions
vous	commenciez
ils/elles	commençaient

CONDITIONAL

je	commencerais
tu	commenceras
il/elle/on	commencerait
nous	commencerions
vous	commenceriez
ils/elles	commenceraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

commencé

► **conclure** (to conclude)**PRESENT**

je	conclus
tu	conclus
il/elle/on	conclut
nous	concluons
vous	concluez
ils/elles	concluent

PERFECT

j'	ai conclu
tu	as conclu
il/elle/on	a conclu
nous	avons conclu
vous	avez conclu
ils/elles	ont conclu

FUTURE

je	conclurai
tu	concluras
il/elle/on	conclura
nous	conclurons
vous	conclurez
ils/elles	concluront

IMPERATIVE

conclus / concluons / concluez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

concluant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	conclue
tu	conclues
il/elle/on	conclue
nous	concluions
vous	concluez
ils/elles	concluent

IMPERFECT

je	concluais
tu	concluais
il/elle/on	concluait
nous	concluions
vous	concluez
ils/elles	concluaient

CONDITIONAL

je	conclurais
tu	conclurais
il/elle/on	conclurait
nous	conclurions
vous	concluriez
ils/elles	concluraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

conclu

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Ils ont conclu un marché.* They concluded a deal.*J'en ai conclu qu'il était parti.* I concluded that he had gone.*Je conclurai par ces mots...* I will conclude with these words...► **connaître** (to know)**PRESENT**

je	connais
tu	connais
il/elle/on	connait
nous	connaissons
vous	connaissez
ils/elles	connaissent

PERFECT

j'	ai connu
tu	as connu
il/elle/on	a connu
nous	avons connu
vous	avez connu
ils/elles	ont connu

FUTURE

je	connaîtrai
tu	connaîtras
il/elle/on	connaîtra
nous	connaîtrons
vous	connaîtrez
ils/elles	connaîtront

IMPERATIVE

connais / connaissons / connaissez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

connaissant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	connaisse
tu	connaises
il/elle/on	connaisse
nous	connaissons
vous	connaissez
ils/elles	connaissent

IMPERFECT

je	connaisais
tu	connaisais
il/elle/on	connaisait
nous	connaissons
vous	connaissez
ils/elles	connaissaient

CONDITIONAL

je	connaîtrais
tu	connaîtrais
il/elle/on	connaîtrait
nous	connaîtrions
vous	connaîtriez
ils/elles	connaîtraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

connu

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Je ne connais pas du tout cette région.* I don't know the area at all.*Vous connaissez M Amiot?* Do you know Mr Amiot?*Il n'a pas connu son grand-père.* He never knew his granddad.*Ils se sont connus à Rouen.* They first met in Rouen.➡ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb *se connaître*.

► **coudre** (to sew)**PRESENT**

je	couds
tu	couds
il/elle/on	coud
nous	cousons
vous	cousez
ils/elles	cousent

PERFECT

j'	ai cousu
tu	as cousu
il/elle/on	a cousu
nous	avons cousu
vous	avez cousu
ils/elles	ont cousu

FUTURE

je	coudrai
tu	coudras
il/elle/on	coudra
nous	coudrons
vous	coudrez
ils/elles	coudront

IMPERATIVE

couds / cousons / cousez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

cousant

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Tu sais **coudre**?* Can you sew?*Elle **a cousu** elle-même son costume.* She made her costume herself.**PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE**

je	couse
tu	couses
il/elle/on	couse
nous	cousions
vous	cousiez
ils/elles	cousent

IMPERFECT

je	cousais
tu	cousais
il/elle/on	cousait
nous	cousions
vous	cousiez
ils/elles	cousaient

CONDITIONAL

je	coudrais
tu	coudrais
il/elle/on	coudrait
nous	coudrions
vous	coudriez
ils/elles	coudraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

cousu

► **courir** (to run)**PRESENT**

je	cours
tu	cours
il/elle/on	court
nous	courons
vous	courez
ils/elles	courent

PERFECT

j'	ai couru
tu	as couru
il/elle/on	a couru
nous	avons couru
vous	avez couru
ils/elles	ont couru

FUTURE

je	courrai
tu	courras
il/elle/on	courra
nous	courrons
vous	courrez
ils/elles	courront

IMPERATIVE

cours / courons / courez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

courant

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Je ne **cours** pas très vite.* I can't run very fast.*Elle est sortie en **courant**.* She ran out.*Ne **courez** pas dans le couloir.* Don't run in the corridor.*J'**ai couru** jusqu'à l'école.* I ran all the way to school.**PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE**

je	coure
tu	coures
il/elle/on	coure
nous	courions
vous	couriez
ils/elles	courent

IMPERFECT

je	courais
tu	courais
il/elle/on	courait
nous	courions
vous	couriez
ils/elles	couraient

CONDITIONAL

je	courrais
tu	courrais
il/elle/on	courrait
nous	courrions
vous	courriez
ils/elles	courraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

couru

► **craindre** (to fear)**PRESENT**

je	crains
tu	crains
il/elle/on	craint
nous	craignons
vous	craignez
ils/elles	craignent

PERFECT

j'	ai craint
tu	as craint
il/elle/on	a craint
nous	avons craint
vous	avez craint
ils/elles	ont craint

FUTURE

je	craindrai
tu	craindras
il/elle/on	craindra
nous	craindrons
vous	craindrez
ils/elles	craindront

IMPERATIVE

crains / craignons / craignez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

craignant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

*Tu n'as rien à **craindre**.* You've got nothing to fear.
*Je **crains** le pire.* I fear the worst.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	craigne
tu	craignes
il/elle/on	craigne
nous	craignons
vous	craigniez
ils/elles	craignent

IMPERFECT

je	craignais
tu	craignais
il/elle/on	craignait
nous	craignions
vous	craigniez
ils/elles	craignaient

CONDITIONAL

je	craindrais
tu	craindrais
il/elle/on	craindrait
nous	craindrions
vous	craindriez
ils/elles	craindraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

craint

► **créer** (to create)**PRESENT**

je	crée
tu	crées
il/elle/on	crée
nous	créons
vous	créez
ils/elles	créent

PERFECT

j'	ai créé
tu	as créé
il/elle/on	a créé
nous	avons créé
vous	avez créé
ils/elles	ont créé

FUTURE

je	créerai
tu	créeras
il/elle/on	créera
nous	créerons
vous	créerez
ils/elles	créeront

IMPERATIVE

crée / créons / créez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

créant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

*Il **a créé** une nouvelle invention.* He's created a new invention.
*Ce virus **crée** des difficultés dans le monde entier.* This virus is creating difficulties all over the world.
*Le gouvernement **créera** deux mille emplois supplémentaires.* The government will create an extra 2000 jobs.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	crée
tu	crées
il/elle/on	crée
nous	créions
vous	créiez
ils/elles	créent

IMPERFECT

je	créais
tu	créais
il/elle/on	créait
nous	créions
vous	créiez
ils/elles	créaient

CONDITIONAL

je	créerais
tu	créerais
il/elle/on	créerait
nous	créerions
vous	créeriez
ils/elles	créeraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

créé

► **crier** (to shout)**PRESENT**

je	crie
tu	cries
il/elle/on	crie
nous	crions
vous	criez
ils/elles	crient

PERFECT

j'	ai crié
tu	as crié
il/elle/on	a crié
nous	avons crié
vous	avez crié
ils/elles	ont crié

FUTURE

je	crierai
tu	crieras
il/elle/on	criera
nous	crierons
vous	crierez
ils/elles	crieront

IMPERATIVE

crie / crions / criez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

criant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Ne **crie** pas comme ça! Don't shout!

Elle **a crié** au secours. She cried for help.

"Attention!", **cria**-t-il. "Watch out!" he shouted.

► **croire** (to believe)**PRESENT**

je	crois
tu	crois
il/elle/on	croit
nous	croions
vous	croiez
ils/elles	croient

PERFECT

j'	ai cru
tu	as cru
il/elle/on	a cru
nous	avons cru
vous	avez cru
ils/elles	ont cru

FUTURE

je	croirai
tu	croiras
il/elle/on	croira
nous	croirons
vous	croirez
ils/elles	croiront

IMPERATIVE

crois / croyons / croyez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

croyant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Je **ne te crois** pas. I don't believe you.

J'**ai cru** que tu n'allais pas venir. I thought you weren't going to come.

Elle **croyait** encore au père Noël. She still believed in Santa.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	crie
tu	cries
il/elle/on	crie
nous	criions
vous	criiez
ils/elles	crient

IMPERFECT

je	criais
tu	criais
il/elle/on	criait
nous	criions
vous	criiez
ils/elles	criaient

CONDITIONAL

je	crierais
tu	crierais
il/elle/on	crierait
nous	crierions
vous	crieriez
ils/elles	crieraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

crié

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	croie
tu	croies
il/elle/on	croie
nous	croyions
vous	croyiez
ils/elles	croient

IMPERFECT

je	croyais
tu	croyais
il/elle/on	croyait
nous	croyions
vous	croyiez
ils/elles	croyaient

CONDITIONAL

je	croirais
tu	croirais
il/elle/on	croirait
nous	croirions
vous	croiriez
ils/elles	croiraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

cru

► **croître** (to grow)**PRESENT**

je	croîs
tu	croîs
il/elle/on	croît
nous	croissons
vous	croissez
ils/elles	croissent

PERFECT

j'	ai crû
tu	as crû
il/elle/on	a crû
nous	avons crû
vous	avez crû
ils/elles	ont crû

FUTURE

je	croîtrai
tu	croîtras
il/elle/on	croîtra
nous	croîtrons
vous	croîtrez
ils/elles	croîtront

IMPERATIVE

croîs / croissons / croissez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

croissant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Les ventes **croissent** de 6% par an. Sales are growing by 6% per year.
C'est une plante qui **croît** dans les pays chauds. This plant grows in hot countries.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	croisse
tu	croisses
il/elle/on	croisse
nous	croissions
vous	croissiez
ils/elles	croissent

IMPERFECT

je	croissais
tu	croissais
il/elle/on	croissait
nous	croissions
vous	croissiez
ils/elles	croissaient

CONDITIONAL

je	croîtrais
tu	croîtrais
il/elle/on	croîtrait
nous	croîtrions
vous	croîtriez
ils/elles	croîtraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

crû (NB: crue, crus, crues)

► **cueillir** (to pick)**PRESENT**

je	cueille
tu	cueilles
il/elle/on	cueille
nous	cueillons
vous	cueillez
ils/elles	cueillent

PERFECT

j'	ai cueilli
tu	as cueilli
il/elle/on	a cueilli
nous	avons cueilli
vous	avez cueilli
ils/elles	ont cueilli

FUTURE

je	cueillerai
tu	cueilleras
il/elle/on	cueillera
nous	cueillerons
vous	cueillerez
ils/elles	cueilleront

IMPERATIVE

cueille / cueillons / cueillez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

cueillant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

J'**ai cueilli** quelques fraises dans le jardin. I've picked a few strawberries in the garden.
Il est interdit de **cueillir** des fleurs sauvages dans la montagne. It's forbidden to pick wild flowers in the mountains.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	cueille
tu	cueilles
il/elle/on	cueille
nous	cueillions
vous	cueilliez
ils/elles	cueillent

IMPERFECT

je	cueillais
tu	cueillais
il/elle/on	cueillait
nous	cueillions
vous	cueilliez
ils/elles	cueillaient

CONDITIONAL

je	cueillerais
tu	cueillerais
il/elle/on	cueillerait
nous	cueillerions
vous	cueilleriez
ils/elles	cueilleraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

cueilli

► **cuire** (to cook)**PRESENT**

je	cuis
tu	cuis
il/elle/on	cuit
nous	cuisons
vous	cuisiez
ils/elles	cuisent

PERFECT

j'	ai cuit
tu	as cuit
il/elle/on	a cuit
nous	avons cuit
vous	avez cuit
ils/elles	ont cuit

FUTURE

je	cuirai
tu	cuiras
il/elle/on	cuirra
nous	cuirons
vous	cuirez
ils/elles	cuiront

IMPERATIVE

cuis / cuisons / cuisinez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

cuisant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Je les ai cuits au beurre. I cooked them in butter.
En général, je cuis les légumes à la vapeur. I usually steam vegetables.
Ce gâteau prend environ une heure à cuire. This cake takes about an hour to bake.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

► **descendre** (to go down)**PRESENT**

je	descends
tu	descends
il/elle/on	descend
nous	descendons
vous	descendez
ils/elles	descendent

PERFECT

je	suis descendu(e)
tu	es descendu(e)
il/elle/on	est descendu(e)
nous	sommes descendu(e)s
vous	êtes descendu(e)s
ils/elles	sont descendu(e)s

FUTURE

je	descendrai
tu	descendras
il/elle/on	descendra
nous	descendrons
vous	descendrez
ils/elles	descendront

IMPERATIVE


descends / descendons / descendez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

descendant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Descendez la rue jusqu'au rond-point. Go down the street to the roundabout.
Reste en bas: je descends! Stay downstairs – I'm coming down!
Nous sommes descendus à la station Trocadéro. We got off at the Trocadéro station.
Vous pouvez descendre ma valise, s'il vous plaît? Can you get my suitcase down, please?

 Note that **descendre** takes **avoir** in the perfect tense when it is used with a direct object; see page 114.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	cuisse
tu	cuis
il/elle/on	cuisse
nous	cuisions
vous	cuisiez
ils/elles	cuisent

IMPERFECT

je	cuisais
tu	cuisais
il/elle/on	cuisait
nous	cuisions
vous	cuisiez
ils/elles	cuisaient

CONDITIONAL

je	cuirais
tu	cuirais
il/elle/on	cuirait
nous	cuirions
vous	cuiriez
ils/elles	cuiraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

cuit

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	descende
tu	descendes
il/elle/on	descende
nous	descendions
vous	descendiez
ils/elles	descendent

IMPERFECT

je	descendais
tu	descendais
il/elle/on	descendait
nous	descendions
vous	descendiez
ils/elles	descendaient

CONDITIONAL

je	descendrais
tu	descendrais
il/elle/on	descendrait
nous	descendrions
vous	descendriez
ils/elles	descendraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

descendu

► **devenir** (to become)**PRESENT**

je	deviens
tu	deviens
il/elle/on	devient
nous	devenons
vous	devenez
ils/elles	deviennent

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	devienne
tu	deviennes
il/elle/on	devienne
nous	devenions
vous	deveniez
ils/elles	deviennent

PERFECT

je	suis devenu(e)
tu	es devenu(e)
il/elle/on	est devenu(e)
nous	sommes devenu(e)s
vous	êtes devenu(e)s
ils/elles	sont devenu(e)s

IMPERFECT

je	devenais
tu	devenais
il/elle/on	devenait
nous	devenions
vous	deveniez
ils/elles	devenaient

FUTURE

je	deviendrai
tu	deviendras
il/elle/on	deviendra
nous	deviendrons
vous	deviendrez
ils/elles	deviendront

CONDITIONAL

je	deviendrais
tu	deviendrais
il/elle/on	deviendrait
nous	deviendrions
vous	deviendriez
ils/elles	deviendraient

IMPERATIVE

deviens / devenons / devenez

PAST PARTICIPLE

devenu

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

devenant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Il est devenu médecin. He became a doctor.

Ça devient de plus en plus difficile. It's becoming more and more difficult.

Qu'est-ce qu'elle est devenue? What has become of her?

► **devoir** (to have to; to owe)**PRESENT**

je	dois
tu	dois
il/elle/on	doit
nous	devons
vous	devez
ils/elles	doivent

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	doive
tu	doives
il/elle/on	doive
nous	devions
vous	deviez
ils/elles	doivent

PERFECT

j'	ai dû
tu	as dû
il/elle/on	a dû
nous	avons dû
vous	avez dû
ils/elles	ont dû

IMPERFECT

je	devais
tu	devais
il/elle/on	devait
nous	devions
vous	deviez
ils/elles	devaient

FUTURE

je	devrai
tu	devras
il/elle/on	devra
nous	devrons
vous	devrez
ils/elles	devront

CONDITIONAL

je	devrais
tu	devrais
il/elle/on	devrait
nous	devrions
vous	devriez
ils/elles	devraient

IMPERATIVE

dois / devons / devez

PAST PARTICIPLE

dû (NB: due, dus, dues)

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

devant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Je dois aller faire les courses ce matin. I have to do the shopping this morning.

À quelle heure est-ce que tu dois partir? What time do you have to leave?

Il a dû faire ses devoirs hier soir. He had to do his homework last night.

Il devait prendre le train pour aller travailler. He had to go to work by train.

► **dire** (to say)**PRESENT**

je	dis
tu	dis
il/elle/on	dit
nous	disons
vous	dites
ils/elles	disent

PERFECT

j'	ai dit
tu	as dit
il/elle/on	a dit
nous	avons dit
vous	avez dit
ils/elles	ont dit

FUTURE

je	dirai
tu	diras
il/elle/on	dira
nous	dirons
vous	direz
ils/elles	diront

IMPERATIVE

dis / disons / dites

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

disant

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Qu'est-ce qu'elle dit?* What is she saying?*"Bonjour!", a-t-il dit.* "Hello!" he said.*Ils m'ont dit que le film était nul.* They told me that the film was rubbish.*Comment ça se dit en anglais?* How do you say that in English?➡ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb *se dire*.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

► **donner** (to give)**PRESENT**

je	donne
tu	donnes
il/elle/on	donne
nous	donnons
vous	donnez
ils/elles	donnent

PERFECT

j'	ai donné
tu	as donné
il/elle/on	a donné
nous	avons donné
vous	avez donné
ils/elles	ont donné

FUTURE

je	donnerai
tu	donneras
il/elle/on	donnera
nous	donnerons
vous	donnerez
ils/elles	donneront

IMPERATIVE

donne / donnons / donnez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

donnant

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Donne-moi la main.* Give me your hand.*Est-ce que je t'ai donné mon adresse?* Did I give you my address?*L'appartement donne sur la place.* The flat overlooks the square.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	dis
tu	dises
il/elle/on	dise
nous	disions
vous	disiez
ils/elles	disent

IMPERFECT

je	disais
tu	disais
il/elle/on	disait
nous	disions
vous	disiez
ils/elles	disaient

CONDITIONAL

je	dirais
tu	dirais
il/elle/on	dirait
nous	dirions
vous	diriez
ils/elles	diraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

dit

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	donne
tu	donnes
il/elle/on	donne
nous	donnions
vous	donniez
ils/elles	donnent

IMPERFECT

je	donnais
tu	donnais
il/elle/on	donnait
nous	donnions
vous	donniez
ils/elles	donnaient

CONDITIONAL

je	donnerais
tu	donnerais
il/elle/on	donnerait
nous	donnerions
vous	donneriez
ils/elles	donneraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

donné

► **dormir** (to sleep)**PRESENT**

je	dors
tu	dors
il/elle/on	dort
nous	dormons
vous	dormez
ils/elles	dorment

PERFECT

j'	ai dormi
tu	as dormi
il/elle/on	a dormi
nous	avons dormi
vous	avez dormi
ils/elles	ont dormi

FUTURE

je	dormirai
tu	dormiras
il/elle/on	dormira
nous	dormirons
vous	dormirez
ils/elles	dormiront

IMPERATIVE

dors / dormons / dormez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

dormant

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Tu as bien dormi?* Did you sleep well?*Nous dormons dans la même chambre.* We sleep in the same bedroom.*À 9 heures, il dormait déjà.* He was already asleep by nine.► **écrire** (to write)**PRESENT**

j'	écris
tu	écris
il/elle/on	écrit
nous	écrivons
vous	écrivez
ils/elles	écrivent

PERFECT

j'	ai écrit
tu	as écrit
il/elle/on	a écrit
nous	avons écrit
vous	avez écrit
ils/elles	ont écrit

FUTURE

j'	écrirai
tu	écriras
il/elle/on	écrira
nous	écrirons
vous	écrirez
ils/elles	écriront

IMPERATIVE

écris / écrivons / écrivez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

écrivant

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Tu as écrit à ta correspondante récemment?* Have you written to your penfriend lately?*Elle écrit des romans.* She writes novels.*Comment ça s'écrit, "brouillard"?* How do you spell "brouillard"?➡ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb *s'écrire*.**PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE**

je	dorme
tu	dormes
il/elle/on	dorme
nous	dormions
vous	dormiez
ils/elles	dorment

IMPERFECT

je	dormais
tu	dormais
il/elle/on	dormait
nous	dormions
vous	dormiez
ils/elles	dormaient

CONDITIONAL

je	dormirais
tu	dormirais
il/elle/on	dormirait
nous	dormirions
vous	dormiriez
ils/elles	dormiraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

dormi

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

j'	écrive
tu	écrives
il/elle/on	écrive
nous	écrivions
vous	écriviez
ils/elles	écrivent

IMPERFECT

j'	écrivais
tu	écrivais
il/elle/on	écrivait
nous	écrivions
vous	écriviez
ils/elles	écrivaient

CONDITIONAL

j'	écrirais
tu	écrirais
il/elle/on	écrirait
nous	écririons
vous	écririez
ils/elles	écriraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

écrit

► **émouvoir** (to move)**PRESENT**

j'	émeus
tu	émeus
il/elle/on	émeut
nous	émouvons
vous	émouvez
ils/elles	émeuvent

PERFECT

j'	ai ému
tu	as ému
il/elle/on	a ému
nous	avons ému
vous	avez ému
ils/elles	ont ému

FUTURE

j'	émouvrai
tu	émouvras
il/elle/on	émouvra
nous	émouvrons
vous	émouvrez
ils/elles	émouvront

IMPERATIVE

émeus / émouvons / émouvez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

émouvant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Ce film nous **a ému**. This film moved us.
 Cette histoire m'**émeut** toujours beaucoup. This story always moves me to tears.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

j'	émeuve
tu	émeuves
il/elle/on	émeuve
nous	émouvions
vous	émouviez
ils/elles	émeuvent

IMPERFECT

j'	émouvais
tu	émouvais
il/elle/on	émouvait
nous	émouvions
vous	émouviez
ils/elles	émouvaient

CONDITIONAL

j'	émouvrais
tu	émouvrais
il/elle/on	émouvrait
nous	émouvriions
vous	émouvriez
ils/elles	émouvraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

ému

► **entrer** (to enter)**PRESENT**

j'	entre
tu	entres
il/elle/on	entre
nous	entrons
vous	entrez
ils/elles	entrent

PERFECT

je	suis entré(e)
tu	es entré(e)
il/elle/on	est entré(e)
nous	sommes entré(e)s
vous	êtes entré(e)s
ils/elles	sont entré(e)s

FUTURE

j'	entrerais
tu	entreras
il/elle/on	entrera
nous	entrerons
vous	entrerez
ils/elles	entreront

IMPERATIVE

entre / entrons / entrez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

entrant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

j'	entre
tu	entres
il/elle/on	entre
nous	entrions
vous	entriez
ils/elles	entrent

IMPERFECT

j'	entraiss
tu	entraiss
il/elle/on	entraît
nous	entrions
vous	entriez
ils/elles	entraient

CONDITIONAL

j'	entrerais
tu	entrerais
il/elle/on	entrerait
nous	entrerions
vous	entreriez
ils/elles	entreraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

entré

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Je **peux entrer**? Can I come in?
 Essuie-toi les pieds **en entrant**. Wipe your feet as you come in.
 Ils **sont tous entrés** dans la maison. They all went into the house.

► **envoyer** (to send)**PRESENT**

j'	envoie
tu	envoies
il/elle/on	envoie
nous	envoyons
vous	envoyez
ils/elles	envoient

PERFECT

j'	ai envoyé
tu	as envoyé
il/elle/on	a envoyé
nous	avons envoyé
vous	avez envoyé
ils/elles	ont envoyé

FUTURE

j'	enverrai
tu	enverras
il/elle/on	enverra
nous	enverrons
vous	enverrez
ils/elles	enverront

IMPERATIVE

envoie / envoyons / envoyez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

envoyant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

J'ai envoyé une carte postale à ma tante. I sent my aunt a postcard.

Envoie-moi un e-mail. Send me an email.

Je t'enverrai ton cadeau par la poste. I'll send you your present by post.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

j'	envoie
tu	envoies
il/elle/on	envoie
nous	envoyions
vous	envoyiez
ils/elles	envoient

IMPERFECT

j'	envoyais
tu	envoyais
il/elle/on	envoyait
nous	envoyions
vous	envoyiez
ils/elles	envoyaient

CONDITIONAL

j'	enverrais
tu	enverrais
il/elle/on	enverrait
nous	enverrions
vous	enverriez
ils/elles	enverraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

envoyé

► **espérer** (to hope)**PRESENT**

j'	espère
tu	espères
il/elle/on	espère
nous	espérons
vous	espérez
ils/elles	espèrent

PERFECT

j'	ai espéré
tu	as espéré
il/elle/on	a espéré
nous	avons espéré
vous	avez espéré
ils/elles	ont espéré

FUTURE

j'	espérerai
tu	espéreras
il/elle/on	espérera
nous	espérerons
vous	espérerez
ils/elles	espéreront

IMPERATIVE

espère / espérons / espérez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

espérant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

J'espère que tu vas bien. I hope you're well.

Il espérait pouvoir venir. He was hoping he'd be able to come.

Tu penses réussir tes examens? – J'espère bien! Do you think you'll pass your exams?

– I hope so!

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

j'	espère
tu	espères
il/elle/on	espère
nous	espérions
vous	espériez
ils/elles	espèrent

IMPERFECT

j'	espérais
tu	espérais
il/elle/on	espérait
nous	espérions
vous	espériez
ils/elles	espéraient

CONDITIONAL

j'	espérerais
tu	espérerais
il/elle/on	espérerait
nous	espérerions
vous	espéreriez
ils/elles	espéreraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

espéré

► **être** (to be)**PRESENT**

je	suis
tu	es
il/elle/on	est
nous	sommes
vous	êtes
ils/elles	sont

PERFECT

j'	ai été
tu	as été
il/elle/on	a été
nous	avons été
vous	avez été
ils/elles	ont été

FUTURE

je	serai
tu	seras
il/elle/on	sera
nous	serons
vous	serez
ils/elles	seront

IMPERATIVE

sois / soyons / soyez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

étant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	sois
tu	sois
il/elle/on	soit
nous	soyons
vous	soyez
ils/elles	soient

IMPERFECT

j'	étais
tu	étais
il/elle/on	était
nous	étions
vous	étiez
ils/elles	étaient

CONDITIONAL

je	serais
tu	serais
il/elle/on	serait
nous	serions
vous	seriez
ils/elles	seraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

été

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Mon père est professeur.* My father's a teacher.*Quelle heure est-il? – Il est dix heures.* What time is it? – It's 10 o'clock.*Ils ne sont pas encore arrivés.* They haven't arrived yet.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

► **faire** (to do; to make)**PRESENT**

je	fais
tu	fais
il/elle/on	fait
nous	faisons
vous	faites
ils/elles	font

PERFECT

j'	ai fait
tu	as fait
il/elle/on	a fait
nous	avons fait
vous	avez fait
ils/elles	ont fait

FUTURE

je	ferai
tu	feras
il/elle/on	fera
nous	ferons
vous	ferez
ils/elles	feront

IMPERATIVE

fais / faisons / faites

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

faisant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	fasse
tu	fasses
il/elle/on	fasse
nous	fassions
vous	fassiez
ils/elles	fassent

IMPERFECT

je	faisais
tu	faisais
il/elle/on	faisait
nous	faisions
vous	faisiez
ils/elles	faisaient

CONDITIONAL

je	ferais
tu	ferais
il/elle/on	ferait
nous	ferions
vous	feriez
ils/elles	feraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

fait

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Qu'est-ce que tu fais?* What are you doing?*Qu'est-ce qu'il a fait?* What has he done? or What did he do?*J'ai fait un gâteau.* I've made a cake or I made a cake.*Il s'est fait couper les cheveux.* He's had his hair cut.➡ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb *se faire*.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

► **falloir** (to be necessary)**PRESENT**

il faut

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

il faille

PERFECT

il a fallu

IMPERFECT

il fallait

FUTURE

il faudra

CONDITIONAL

il faudrait

IMPERATIVE

not used

PAST PARTICIPLE

fallu

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

not used

EXAMPLE PHRASESIl **faut** se dépêcher! We have to hurry up!Il **me fallait** de l'argent. I needed money.Il **faudra** que tu sois là à 8 heures. You'll have to be there at 8.► **finir** (to finish)**PRESENT**je finis
tu finis
il/elle/on finit
nous finissons
vous finissez
ils/elles finissent**PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE**je finisse
tu finisses
il/elle/on finisse
nous finissions
vous finissiez
ils/elles finissent**PERFECT**j' ai fini
tu as fini
il/elle/on a fini
nous avons fini
vous avez fini
ils/elles ont fini**IMPERFECT**je finissais
tu finissais
il/elle/on finissait
nous finissions
vous finissiez
ils/elles finissaient**FUTURE**je finirai
tu finiras
il/elle/on finira
nous finirons
vous finirez
ils/elles finiront**CONDITIONAL**je finirais
tu finirais
il/elle/on finirait
nous finirions
vous finiriez
ils/elles finiraient**IMPERATIVE**

finis / finissons / finissez

PAST PARTICIPLE

fini

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

finissant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Finis ta soupe! Finish your soup!

J'**ai fini**! I've finished!Je **finirai** mes devoirs demain. I'll finish my homework tomorrow.

► **fuir** (to flee)**PRESENT**

je	fuis
tu	fuis
il/elle/on	fuit
nous	fuyons
vous	fuyez
ils/elles	fuient

PERFECT

j'	ai fui
tu	as fui
il/elle/on	a fui
nous	avons fui
vous	avez fui
ils/elles	ont fui

FUTURE

je	fuirai
tu	fuiras
il/elle/on	fuirà
nous	fuirons
vous	fuierez
ils/elles	fuiront

IMPERATIVE

fuis / fuyons / fuyez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

fuyant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Ils ont fui leur pays. They fled their country.
Le robinet fuit. The tap is dripping.

► **haïr** (to hate)**PRESENT**

je	hais
tu	hais
il/elle/on	hait
nous	haïssons
vous	haïssez
ils/elles	haïssent

PERFECT

j'	ai haï
tu	as haï
il/elle/on	a haï
nous	avons haï
vous	avez haï
ils/elles	ont haï

FUTURE

je	haïrai
tu	haïras
il/elle/on	haïra
nous	haïrons
vous	haïrez
ils/elles	haïront

IMPERATIVE

hais / haïssons / haïssez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

haïssant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Je te hais! I hate you!
Elle haïssait tout le monde. She hated everyone.
Ils se haïssent. They hate each other.

➡ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb *se haïr*.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	fuie
tu	fuies
il/elle/on	fuie
nous	fuyions
vous	fuyiez
ils/elles	fuient

IMPERFECT

je	fuyais
tu	fuyais
il/elle/on	fuyait
nous	fuyions
vous	fuyiez
ils/elles	fuyaient

CONDITIONAL

je	fuirais
tu	fuirais
il/elle/on	fuirait
nous	fuirions
vous	fuiriez
ils/elles	fuiraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

fui

► **jeter** (to throw)**PRESENT**

je	jette
tu	jettes
il/elle/on	jette
nous	jetons
vous	jetez
ils/elles	jettent

PERFECT

j'	ai jeté
tu	as jeté
il/elle/on	a jeté
nous	avons jeté
vous	avez jeté
ils/elles	ont jeté

FUTURE

je	jetterai
tu	jetteras
il/elle/on	jettera
nous	jetterons
vous	jetterez
ils/elles	jetteront

IMPERATIVE

jette / jetons / jetez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

jetant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Ne **jette** pas tes vêtements par terre. Don't throw your clothes on the floor.
 Elle **a jeté** son chewing-gum par la fenêtre. She threw her chewing gum out of the window.
 Ils ne **jettent** jamais rien. They never throw anything away.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

► **joindre** (to join)**PRESENT**

je	joins
tu	joins
il/elle/on	joint
nous	joignons
vous	joignez
ils/elles	joignent

PERFECT

j'	ai joint
tu	as joint
il/elle/on	a joint
nous	avons joint
vous	avez joint
ils/elles	ont joint

FUTURE

je	joindrai
tu	joindras
il/elle/on	joindra
nous	joindrons
vous	joindrez
ils/elles	joindront

IMPERATIVE

joins / joignons / joignez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

joignant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Où est-ce qu'on peut te **joindre** ce week-end? Where can we contact you this weekend?
 On **a joint** les deux tables. We put the two tables together.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	jette
tu	jettes
il/elle/on	jette
nous	jetions
vous	jetiez
ils/elles	jettent

IMPERFECT

je	jétais
tu	jétais
il/elle/on	jetait
nous	jetions
vous	jetiez
ils/elles	jetaient

CONDITIONAL

je	jetterais
tu	jetterais
il/elle/on	jetterait
nous	jetterions
vous	jetteriez
ils/elles	jetteraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

jeté

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	joigne
tu	joignes
il/elle/on	joigne
nous	joignions
vous	joigniez
ils/elles	joignent

IMPERFECT

je	joignais
tu	joignais
il/elle/on	joignait
nous	joignions
vous	joigniez
ils/elles	joignaient

CONDITIONAL

je	joindrais
tu	joindrais
il/elle/on	joindrait
nous	joindrions
vous	joindriez
ils/elles	joindraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

joint

► **lever** (to lift)**PRESENT**

je	lève
tu	lèves
il/elle/on	lève
nous	levons
vous	levez
ils/elles	lèvent

PERFECT

j'	ai levé
tu	as levé
il/elle/on	a levé
nous	avons levé
vous	avez levé
ils/elles	ont levé

FUTURE

je	lèverai
tu	lèveras
il/elle/on	lèvera
nous	lèverons
vous	lèverez
ils/elles	lèveront

IMPERATIVE

lève / levons / levez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

levant

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Lève la tête.* Lift your head up.*Levez la main!* Put your hand up!*Je me lève tous les jours à sept heures.* I get up at 7 every day.⇒ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb *se lever*.► **lire** (to read)**PRESENT**

je	lis
tu	lis
il/elle/on	lit
nous	lisons
vous	lisez
ils/elles	lisent

PERFECT

j'	ai lu
tu	as lu
il/elle/on	a lu
nous	avons lu
vous	avez lu
ils/elles	ont lu

FUTURE

je	lirai
tu	liras
il/elle/on	lira
nous	lirons
vous	lirez
ils/elles	liront

IMPERATIVE

lis / lisons / lisez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

lisant

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Vous avez lu "Madame Bovary"?* Have you read "Madame Bovary"?*Je le lirai dans l'avion.* I'll read it on the plane.*Elle lui lisait une histoire.* She was reading him a story.**PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE**

je	lève
tu	lèves
il/elle/on	lève
nous	levions
vous	leviez
ils/elles	lèvent

IMPERFECT

je	levais
tu	levais
il/elle/on	levait
nous	levions
vous	leviez
ils/elles	levaient

CONDITIONAL

je	lèverais
tu	lèverais
il/elle/on	lèverait
nous	lèverions
vous	lèveriez
ils/elles	lèveraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

levé

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	lise
tu	lises
il/elle/on	lise
nous	lisions
vous	lisiez
ils/elles	lisent

IMPERFECT

je	lisais
tu	lisais
il/elle/on	lisait
nous	lisions
vous	lisiez
ils/elles	lisaient

CONDITIONAL

je	lirais
tu	lirais
il/elle/on	lirait
nous	lirions
vous	liriez
ils/elles	liraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

lu

► **manger** (to eat)**PRESENT**

je	mange
tu	manges
il/elle/on	mange
nous	mangeons
vous	mangez
ils/elles	mangent

PERFECT

j'	ai mangé
tu	as mangé
il/elle/on	a mangé
nous	avons mangé
vous	avez mangé
ils/elles	ont mangé

FUTURE

je	mangerai
tu	mangeras
il/elle/on	mangera
nous	mangerons
vous	mangerez
ils/elles	mangeront

IMPERATIVE

mange / mangeons / mangez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

mangeant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Nous ne mangeons pas souvent ensemble. We don't often eat together.
Tu as assez mangé? Have you had enough to eat?
Je mangerai plus tard. I'll eat later on.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	mange
tu	manges
il/elle/on	mange
nous	mangions
vous	mangiez
ils/elles	mangent

IMPERFECT

je	mangeais
tu	mangeais
il/elle/on	mangeait
nous	mangions
vous	mangiez
ils/elles	mangeaient

CONDITIONAL

je	mangerais
tu	mangerais
il/elle/on	mangerait
nous	mangerions
vous	mangeriez
ils/elles	mangeraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

mangé

► **maudire** (to curse)**PRESENT**

je	maudis
tu	maudis
il/elle/on	maudit
nous	maudissons
vous	maudissez
ils/elles	maudissent

PERFECT

j'	ai maudit
tu	as maudit
il/elle/on	a maudit
nous	avons maudit
vous	avez maudit
ils/elles	ont maudit

FUTURE

je	maudirai
tu	maudiras
il/elle/on	maudira
nous	maudirons
vous	maudirez
ils/elles	maudiront

IMPERATIVE

maudis / maudissons / maudissez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

maudissant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Ils maudissent leurs ennemis. They curse their enemies.
Ce maudit stylo ne marche pas! This blasted pen doesn't work!

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	maudisse
tu	maudisses
il/elle/on	maudisse
nous	maudissions
vous	maudissiez
ils/elles	maudissent

IMPERFECT

je	maudissais
tu	maudissais
il/elle/on	maudissait
nous	maudissions
vous	maudissiez
ils/elles	maudissaient

CONDITIONAL

je	maudirais
tu	maudirais
il/elle/on	maudirait
nous	maudirions
vous	maudiriez
ils/elles	maudiraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

maudit

► **mettre** (to put)**PRESENT**

je	mets
tu	mets
il/elle/on	met
nous	mettons
vous	mettez
ils/elles	mettent

PERFECT

j'	ai mis
tu	as mis
il/elle/on	a mis
nous	avons mis
vous	avez mis
ils/elles	ont mis

FUTURE

je	mettrai
tu	mettras
il/elle/on	mettra
nous	mettrons
vous	mettrez
ils/elles	mettront

IMPERATIVE

mets / mettons / mettez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

mettant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Mets ton manteau! Put your coat on!
Où est-ce que tu as mis les clés? Where have you put the keys?
J'ai mis le livre sur la table. I put the book on the table.
Elle s'est mise à pleurer. She started crying.

⇒ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb *se mettre*.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	mette
tu	mettes
il/elle/on	mette
nous	mettions
vous	mettiez
ils/elles	mettent

IMPERFECT

je	mettais
tu	mettais
il/elle/on	mettait
nous	mettions
vous	mettiez
ils/elles	mettaient

CONDITIONAL

je	mettrais
tu	mettrais
il/elle/on	mettrait
nous	mettrions
vous	mettriez
ils/elles	mettraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

mis

► **monter** (to go up)**PRESENT**

je	monte
tu	montes
il/elle/on	monte
nous	montons
vous	montez
ils/elles	montent

PERFECT

je	suis monté(e)
tu	es monté(e)
il/elle/on	est monté(e)
nous	sommes monté(e)s
vous	êtes monté(e)s
ils/elles	sont monté(e)s

FUTURE

je	monterai
tu	monteras
il/elle/on	montera
nous	monterons
vous	monterez
ils/elles	monteront

IMPERATIVE

monte / montons / montez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

montant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Je suis montée tout en haut de la tour. I went all the way up the tower.
Monte dans la voiture, je t'emmène. Get into the car, I'll take you there.
Il s'est tordu la cheville en montant à une échelle. He twisted his ankle going up a ladder.

ⓘ Note that **monter** takes **avoir** in the perfect tense when it is used with a direct object; see page 114.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	monte
tu	montes
il/elle/on	monte
nous	montions
vous	montiez
ils/elles	montent

IMPERFECT

je	montais
tu	montais
il/elle/on	montait
nous	montions
vous	montiez
ils/elles	montaient

CONDITIONAL

je	monterais
tu	monterais
il/elle/on	monterait
nous	monterions
vous	monteriez
ils/elles	monteraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

monté

► **mordre** (to bite)**PRESENT**

je	mords
tu	mords
il/elle/on	mord
nous	mordons
vous	mordez
ils/elles	mordent

PERFECT

j'	ai mordu
tu	as mordu
il/elle/on	a mordu
nous	avons mordu
vous	avez mordu
ils/elles	ont mordu

FUTURE

je	mordrai
tu	mordras
il/elle/on	mordra
nous	mordrons
vous	mordrez
ils/elles	mordront

IMPERATIVE

mords / mordons / mordez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

mordant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Le chien m'a mordu. The dog bit me.
Il ne va pas te mordre! He won't bite!

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	morde
tu	mordes
il/elle/on	morde
nous	mordions
vous	mordiez
ils/elles	mordent

IMPERFECT

je	mordais
tu	mordais
il/elle/on	mordait
nous	mordions
vous	mordiez
ils/elles	mordaient

CONDITIONAL

je	mordrais
tu	mordrais
il/elle/on	mordrait
nous	mordrions
vous	mordriez
ils/elles	mordraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

mordu

► **moudre** (to grind)**PRESENT**

je	mouds
tu	mouds
il/elle/on	moud
nous	moulons
vous	moulez
ils/elles	moulent

PERFECT

j'	ai moulu
tu	as moulu
il/elle/on	a moulu
nous	avons moulu
vous	avez moulu
ils/elles	ont moulu

FUTURE

je	moudrai
tu	moudras
il/elle/on	moudra
nous	moudrons
vous	moudrez
ils/elles	moudront

IMPERATIVE

mouds / moulons / moulez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

moulant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

J'ai moulu du café pour demain matin. I've ground some coffee for tomorrow morning.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	moule
tu	moules
il/elle/on	moule
nous	moulions
vous	mouliez
ils/elles	moulent

IMPERFECT

je	moulais
tu	moulais
il/elle/on	moulait
nous	moulions
vous	mouliez
ils/elles	moulaient

CONDITIONAL

je	moudrais
tu	moudrais
il/elle/on	moudrait
nous	moudrions
vous	moudriez
ils/elles	moudraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

moulu

► **mourir** (to die)**PRESENT**

je	meurs
tu	meurs
il/elle/on	meurt
nous	mourons
vous	mourez
ils/elles	meurent

PERFECT

je	suis mort(e)
tu	es mort(e)
il/elle/on	est mort(e)
nous	sommes mort(e)s
vous	êtes mort(e)s
ils/elles	sont mort(e)s

FUTURE

je	mourrai
tu	mourras
il/elle/on	mourra
nous	mourrons
vous	mourez
ils/elles	mourront

IMPERATIVE

meurs / mourons / mourez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

mourant

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Elle est morte en 1998.* She died in 1998.*Ils sont morts.* They're dead.*On meurt de froid ici!* We're freezing to death in here!**PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE**

je	meure
tu	meures
il/elle/on	meure
nous	mourions
vous	mouriez
ils/elles	meurent

IMPERFECT

je	mourais
tu	mourais
il/elle/on	mourait
nous	mourions
vous	mouriez
ils/elles	mouraient

CONDITIONAL

je	mourrais
tu	mourrais
il/elle/on	mourrait
nous	mourrions
vous	mourriez
ils/elles	mourraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

mort

► **naître** (to be born)**PRESENT**

je	nais
tu	nais
il/elle/on	naît
nous	naissons
vous	naissiez
ils/elles	naissent

PERFECT

je	suis né(e)
tu	es né(e)
il/elle/on	est né(e)
nous	sommes né(e)s
vous	êtes né(e)s
ils/elles	sont né(e)s

FUTURE

je	naîtrai
tu	naîtras
il/elle/on	naîtra
nous	naîtrons
vous	naîtrez
ils/elles	naîtront

IMPERATIVE

nais / naissons / naissiez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

naissant

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Je suis née le 12 février.* I was born on 12 February.*Le bébé de Delphine naîtra en mars.* Delphine is going to have a baby in March.*Quand est-ce que tu es né?* When were you born?**PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE**

je	naisse
tu	naisses
il/elle/on	naisse
nous	naissions
vous	naissiez
ils/elles	naissent

IMPERFECT

je	naissais
tu	naissais
il/elle/on	naissait
nous	naissions
vous	naissiez
ils/elles	naissaient

CONDITIONAL

je	naîtrais
tu	naîtrais
il/elle/on	naîtrait
nous	naîtrions
vous	naîtriez
ils/elles	naîtraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

né

► **nettoyer** (to clean)**PRESENT**

je	nettoie
tu	nettoies
il/elle/on	nettoie
nous	nettoyons
vous	nettoyez
ils/elles	nettoient

PERFECT

j'	ai nettoyé
tu	as nettoyé
il/elle/on	a nettoyé
nous	avons nettoyé
vous	avez nettoyé
ils/elles	ont nettoyé

FUTURE

je	nettoierai
tu	nettoieras
il/elle/on	nettoiera
nous	nettoierons
vous	nettoierez
ils/elles	nettoieront

IMPERATIVE

nettoie / nettoyons / nettoyez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

nettoyant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Richard **a nettoyé** tout l'appartement. Richard has cleaned the whole flat.
 Elle **nettoyait** le sol en écoutant la radio. She was cleaning the floor while listening to the radio.
 Je **ne nettoie pas** souvent mes lunettes. I don't clean my glasses very often.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	nettoie
tu	nettoies
il/elle/on	nettoie
nous	nettoyions
vous	nettoyez
ils/elles	nettoient

IMPERFECT

je	nettoyais
tu	nettoyais
il/elle/on	nettoyait
nous	nettoyions
vous	nettoyez
ils/elles	nettoyaient

CONDITIONAL

je	nettoierais
tu	nettoierais
il/elle/on	nettoierait
nous	nettoierions
vous	nettoieriez
ils/elles	nettoieraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

nettoyé

► **offrir** (to offer)**PRESENT**

j'	offre
tu	offres
il/elle/on	offre
nous	offrons
vous	offrez
ils/elles	offrent

PERFECT

j'	ai offert
tu	as offert
il/elle/on	a offert
nous	avons offert
vous	avez offert
ils/elles	ont offert

FUTURE

j'	offrirai
tu	offriras
il/elle/on	offrira
nous	offrirons
vous	offrirez
ils/elles	offriront

IMPERATIVE

offre / offrons / offrez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

offrant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

On lui **a offert** un poste de secrétaire. They offered her a secretarial post.
Offre-lui des fleurs. Give her some flowers.
 Viens, je **t'offre** à boire. Come on, I'll buy you a drink.
 Je **me suis offert** un nouveau stylo. I treated myself to a new pen.

➡ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb *s'offrir*.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

j'	offre
tu	offres
il/elle/on	offre
nous	offrions
vous	offriez
ils/elles	offrent

IMPERFECT

j'	offrais
tu	offrais
il/elle/on	offrait
nous	offrions
vous	offriez
ils/elles	offraient

CONDITIONAL

j'	offrirais
tu	offrirais
il/elle/on	offrirait
nous	offririons
vous	offririez
ils/elles	offriraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

offert

► **ouvrir** (to open)**PRESENT**

j'	ouvre
tu	ouvres
il/elle/on	ouvre
nous	ouvrons
vous	ouvrez
ils/elles	ouvrent

PERFECT

j'	ai ouvert
tu	as ouvert
il/elle/on	a ouvert
nous	avons ouvert
vous	avez ouvert
ils/elles	ont ouvert

FUTURE

j'	ouvrirai
tu	ouvriras
il/elle/on	ouvrira
nous	ouvrirons
vous	ouvrirez
ils/elles	ouvriront

IMPERATIVE

ouvre / ouvrons / ouvrez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

ouvrant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Elle **a ouvert** la porte. She opened the door.

Est-ce que tu pourrais **ouvrir** la fenêtre? Could you open the window?

Je me suis coupé en **ouvrant** une boîte de conserve. I cut myself opening a tin.

La porte **s'est ouverte**. The door opened.

➡ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb *s'ouvrir*.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

► **paraître** (to appear)**PRESENT**

je	paraïs
tu	paraïs
il/elle/on	paraît
nous	paraissions
vous	paraissiez
ils/elles	paraissent

PERFECT

j'	ai paru
tu	as paru
il/elle/on	a paru
nous	avons paru
vous	avez paru
ils/elles	ont paru

FUTURE

je	paraîtrai
tu	paraîtras
il/elle/on	paraîtra
nous	paraîtrons
vous	paraîtrez
ils/elles	paraîtront

IMPERATIVE

paraïs / paraissions / paraissiez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

paraissant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Elle **paraissait** fatiguée. She seemed tired.

Gisèle **paraît** plus jeune que son âge. Gisèle doesn't look her age.

Il **paraît** qu'il fait chaud toute l'année là-bas. Apparently it's hot all year round over there.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	paraïsse
tu	paraisses
il/elle/on	paraisse
nous	paraissions
vous	paraissiez
ils/elles	paraissent

IMPERFECT

je	paraissais
tu	paraissais
il/elle/on	paraissait
nous	paraissions
vous	paraissiez
ils/elles	paraissaient

CONDITIONAL

je	paraîtrais
tu	paraîtrais
il/elle/on	paraîtrait
nous	paraîtrions
vous	paraîtriez
ils/elles	paraîtraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

paru

► **partir** (to go; to leave)**PRESENT**

je	pars
tu	pars
il/elle/on	part
nous	partons
vous	partez
ils/elles	partent

PERFECT

je	suis parti(e)
tu	es parti(e)
il/elle/on	est parti(e)
nous	sommes parti(e)s
vous	êtes parti(e)s
ils/elles	sont parti(e)s

FUTURE

je	partirai
tu	partiras
il/elle/on	partira
nous	partirons
vous	partirez
ils/elles	partiront

IMPERATIVE

pars / partons / partez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

partant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

On part en vacances le 15 août. We're going on holiday on 15 August.
Ne partez pas sans moi! Don't leave without me!
Elle est partie tôt ce matin. She left early this morning.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	parte
tu	partes
il/elle/on	parte
nous	partions
vous	partiez
ils/elles	partent

IMPERFECT

je	partais
tu	partais
il/elle/on	partait
nous	partions
vous	partiez
ils/elles	partaient

CONDITIONAL

je	partirais
tu	partirais
il/elle/on	partirait
nous	partirions
vous	partiriez
ils/elles	partiraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

parti

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

► **passer** (to pass)**PRESENT**

je	passe
tu	passes
il/elle/on	passe
nous	passons
vous	passez
ils/elles	passent

PERFECT

j'	ai passé
tu	as passé
il/elle/on	a passé
nous	avons passé
vous	avez passé
ils/elles	ont passé

FUTURE

je	passerai
tu	passeras
il/elle/on	passera
nous	passerons
vous	passerez
ils/elles	passeront

IMPERATIVE

passe / passons / passez


PRESENT PARTICIPLE

passant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Les mois ont passé. Months passed.
Il a passé son examen en juin. He took his exam in June.
Je vais passer les vacances chez mes grands-parents. I'm going to spend the holidays at my grandparents' house.
Elle est passée me dire bonjour. She came by to say hello.
L'histoire se passe au Mexique. The story takes place in Mexico.

 Note that **passer** can also take **être** in the perfect tense; see page 114.

 See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb **se passer**.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	passe
tu	passes
il/elle/on	passe
nous	passions
vous	passiez
ils/elles	passent

IMPERFECT

je	passais
tu	passais
il/elle/on	passait
nous	passions
vous	passiez
ils/elles	passaient

CONDITIONAL

je	passerais
tu	passerais
il/elle/on	passerait
nous	passerions
vous	passeriez
ils/elles	passeraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

passé

► **payer** (to pay)**PRESENT**

je	paye
tu	payes
il/elle/on	paye
nous	payons
vous	payez
ils/elles	payent

PERFECT

j'	ai payé
tu	as payé
il/elle/on	a payé
nous	avons payé
vous	avez payé
ils/elles	ont payé

FUTURE

je	payerai
tu	payeras
il/elle/on	payera
nous	payerons
vous	payerez
ils/elles	payeront

IMPERATIVE

paye / payons / payez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

payant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Tu l'as payé combien? How much did you pay for it?
Ma patronne me paiera demain. My boss will pay me tomorrow.
Les étudiants payent moitié prix. Students pay half price.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

► **peindre** (to paint)**PRESENT**

je	peins
tu	peins
il/elle/on	peint
nous	peignons
vous	peignez
ils/elles	peignent

PERFECT

j'	ai peint
tu	as peint
il/elle/on	a peint
nous	avons peint
vous	avez peint
ils/elles	ont peint

FUTURE

je	peindrai
tu	peindras
il/elle/on	peindra
nous	peindrons
vous	peindrez
ils/elles	peindront

IMPERATIVE

peins / peignons / peignez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

peignant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

On a peint l'entrée en bleu clair. We painted the hall light blue.
Ce tableau a été peint en 1913. This picture was painted in 1913.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	paye
tu	payes
il/elle/on	paye
nous	payions
vous	payiez
ils/elles	payent

IMPERFECT

je	payais
tu	payais
il/elle/on	payait
nous	payions
vous	payiez
ils/elles	payaient

CONDITIONAL

je	payerais
tu	payerais
il/elle/on	payerait
nous	payerions
vous	payeriez
ils/elles	payeraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

payé

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	peigne
tu	peignes
il/elle/on	peigne
nous	peignons
vous	peigniez
ils/elles	peignent

IMPERFECT

je	peignais
tu	peignais
il/elle/on	peignait
nous	peignions
vous	peigniez
ils/elles	peignaient

CONDITIONAL

je	peindrais
tu	peindrais
il/elle/on	peindrait
nous	peindrions
vous	peindriez
ils/elles	peindraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

peint

► **perdre** (to lose)**PRESENT**

je	perds
tu	perds
il/elle/on	perd
nous	perdons
vous	perdez
ils/elles	perdent

PERFECT

j'	ai perdu
tu	as perdu
il/elle/on	a perdu
nous	avons perdu
vous	avez perdu
ils/elles	ont perdu

FUTURE

je	perdrai
tu	perdras
il/elle/on	perdra
nous	perdrons
vous	perdrez
ils/elles	perdront

IMPERATIVE

perds / perdons / perdez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

perdant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

J'ai perdu mon porte-monnaie dans le métro. I lost my purse on the underground.
L'Italie a perdu un à zéro. Italy lost one-nil.
Si tu te perds, appelle-moi. Call me if you get lost.

➡ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb *se perdre*.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	perde
tu	perdes
il/elle/on	perde
nous	perdions
vous	perdiez
ils/elles	perdent

IMPERFECT

je	perdais
tu	perdais
il/elle/on	perdait
nous	perdions
vous	perdiez
ils/elles	perdaient

CONDITIONAL

je	perdrais
tu	perdrais
il/elle/on	perdrait
nous	perdrions
vous	perdriez
ils/elles	perdraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

perdu

► **plaire** (to please)**PRESENT**

je	plais
tu	plais
il/elle/on	plaît
nous	plaisons
vous	plaisez
ils/elles	plaisent

PERFECT

j'	ai plu
tu	as plu
il/elle/on	a plu
nous	avons plu
vous	avez plu
ils/elles	ont plu

FUTURE

je	plairai
tu	plairas
il/elle/on	plaira
nous	plairons
vous	plairez
ils/elles	plairont

IMPERATIVE

plais / plaisons / plaisez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

plaisant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Le menu ne me plaît pas. I don't like the menu.
Ça te plairait d'aller à la mer? Would you like to go to the seaside?
Ça t'a plu, le film? Did you like the film?
s'il te plaît please
s'il vous plaît please

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	plaise
tu	plaises
il/elle/on	plaise
nous	plaisions
vous	plaisiez
ils/elles	plaisent

IMPERFECT

je	plaisais
tu	plaisais
il/elle/on	plaisait
nous	plaisions
vous	plaisiez
ils/elles	plaisaient

CONDITIONAL

je	plairais
tu	plairais
il/elle/on	plairait
nous	plairions
vous	plairiez
ils/elles	plairaient

PAST PARTICIPLE

plu

► **pleuvoir** (to rain)**PRESENT**

il pleut

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

il pleuve

PERFECT

il a plu

IMPERFECT

il pleuvait

FUTURE

il pleuvra

CONDITIONAL

il pleuvrait

IMPERATIVE

not used

PAST PARTICIPLE

plu

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

pleuvant

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Il a plu toute la journée.* It rained all day long.*Il pleut beaucoup à Glasgow.* It rains a lot in Glasgow.*J'espère qu'il ne pleuvra pas demain.* I hope it won't be raining tomorrow.► **pouvoir** (to be able)**PRESENT**je peux
tu peux
il/elle/on peut
nous pouvons
vous pouvez
ils/elles peuvent**PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE**je puisse
tu puisses
il/elle/on puisse
nous puissions
vous puissiez
ils/elles puissent**PERFECT**j' ai pu
tu as pu
il/elle/on a pu
nous avons pu
vous avez pu
ils/elles ont pu**IMPERFECT**je pouvais
tu pouvais
il/elle/on pouvait
nous pouvions
vous pouviez
ils/elles pouvaient**FUTURE**je pourrai
tu pourras
il/elle/on pourra
nous pourrons
vous pourrez
ils/elles pourront**CONDITIONAL**je pourrais
tu pourrais
il/elle/on pourrait
nous pourrions
vous pourriez
ils/elles pourraient**IMPERATIVE**

not used

PAST PARTICIPLE

pu

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

pouvant

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Je peux t'aider, si tu veux.* I can help you if you like.*J'ai fait tout ce que j'ai pu.* I did all I could.*Je ne pourrai pas venir samedi.* I won't be able to come on Saturday.

► **prendre** (to take)**PRESENT**

je	prends
tu	prends
il/elle/on	prend
nous	prenons
vous	prenez
ils/elles	prennent

PERFECT

j'	ai pris
tu	as pris
il/elle/on	a pris
nous	avons pris
vous	avez pris
ils/elles	ont pris

FUTURE

je	prendrai
tu	prendras
il/elle/on	prendra
nous	prendrons
vous	prendrez
ils/elles	prendront

IMPERATIVE

prends / prenons / prenez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

prenant

EXAMPLE PHRASES*J'ai pris plein de photos.* I took lots of pictures.*N'oublie pas de prendre ton passeport.* Don't forget to take your passport.*Il prendra le train de 8h20.* He'll take the 8.20 train.*Pour qui est-ce qu'il se prend?* Who does he think he is?➡ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb *se prendre*.**PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE**

je	prenne
tu	prennes
il/elle/on	prenne
nous	prenions
vous	preniez
ils/elles	prennent

IMPERFECT

je	prenais
tu	prenais
il/elle/on	prenait
nous	prenions
vous	preniez
ils/elles	prenaient

CONDITIONAL

je	prendrais
tu	prendrais
il/elle/on	prendrait
nous	prendrions
vous	prendriez
ils/elles	prendraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

pris

► **protéger** (to protect)**PRESENT**

je	protège
tu	protèges
il/elle/on	protège
nous	protégeons
vous	protégez
ils/elles	protègent

PERFECT

j'	ai protégé
tu	as protégé
il/elle/on	a protégé
nous	avons protégé
vous	avez protégé
ils/elles	ont protégé

FUTURE

je	protégerai
tu	protégeras
il/elle/on	protégera
nous	protégerons
vous	protégerez
ils/elles	protégeront

IMPERATIVE

protège / protégeons / protégez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

protégeant

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Il protège sa petite sœur à l'école.* He protects his little sister at school.*Protège ton livre de la pluie.* Protect your book from the rain.*Le champ est protégé du vent par la colline.* The field is sheltered from the wind by the hill.**PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE**

je	protège
tu	protèges
il/elle/on	protège
nous	protégions
vous	protégiez
ils/elles	protègent

IMPERFECT

je	protégeais
tu	protégeais
il/elle/on	protégeait
nous	protégions
vous	protégiez
ils/elles	protégeaient

CONDITIONAL

je	protégerais
tu	protégerais
il/elle/on	protégerait
nous	protégerions
vous	protégeriez
ils/elles	protégeraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

protégé

► **recevoir** (to receive)**PRESENT**

je	reçois
tu	reçois
il/elle/on	reçoit
nous	recevons
vous	recevez
ils/elles	reçoivent

PERFECT

j'	ai reçu
tu	as reçu
il/elle/on	a reçu
nous	avons reçu
vous	avez reçu
ils/elles	ont reçu

FUTURE

je	recevrai
tu	recevras
il/elle/on	recevra
nous	recevrons
vous	recevrez
ils/elles	recevront

IMPERATIVE

reçois / recevons / recevez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

recevant

EXAMPLE PHRASESElle **a reçu** une lettre de Charlotte. She received a letter from Charlotte.Je **ne reçois** jamais de courrier. I never get any mail.Elle **recevra** une réponse la semaine prochaine. She'll get an answer next week.**PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE**

je	reçoive
tu	reçoives
il/elle/on	reçoive
nous	recevions
vous	receviez
ils/elles	reçoivent

IMPERFECT

je	recevais
tu	recevais
il/elle/on	recevait
nous	recevions
vous	receviez
ils/elles	recevaient

CONDITIONAL

je	recevrais
tu	recevrais
il/elle/on	recevrait
nous	recevrions
vous	recevriez
ils/elles	recevraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

reçu

► **rentrer** (to go back; to go in)**PRESENT**

je	rentre
tu	rentres
il/elle/on	rentre
nous	rentrons
vous	rentrez
ils/elles	rentrent

PERFECT

je	suis rentré(e)
tu	es rentré(e)
il/elle/on	est rentré(e)
nous	sommes rentré(e)s
vous	êtes rentré(e)s
ils/elles	sont rentré(e)s

FUTURE

je	rentrerais
tu	rentreras
il/elle/on	rentrera
nous	rentrerons
vous	rentrerez
ils/elles	rentreront

IMPERATIVE

rentre / rentrons / rentrez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

rentrant

EXAMPLE PHRASESNe **rentre** pas trop tard. Don't come home too late.Ils **sont rentrés** dans le magasin. They went into the shop.À quelle heure est-ce qu'elle **est rentrée**? What time did she get in?Je **rentre** déjeuner à midi. I go home for lunch.Il **a déjà rentré** la voiture dans le garage. He's already brought the car into the garage.Note that **rentrer** takes **avoir** in the perfect tense when it is used with a direct object; see page 114.**PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE**

je	rentre
tu	rentres
il/elle/on	rentre
nous	rentrions
vous	rentriez
ils/elles	rentrent

IMPERFECT

je	rentrais
tu	rentrais
il/elle/on	rentrait
nous	rentrions
vous	rentriez
ils/elles	rentraient

CONDITIONAL

je	rentrerais
tu	rentreras
il/elle/on	rentrerait
nous	rentrerions
vous	rentriez
ils/elles	rentreraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

rentré

► **répondre** (to answer)**PRESENT**

je	réponds
tu	réponds
il/elle/on	répond
nous	répondons
vous	répondez
ils/elles	répondent

PERFECT

j'	ai répondu
tu	as répondu
il/elle/on	a répondu
nous	avons répondu
vous	avez répondu
ils/elles	ont répondu

FUTURE

je	répondrai
tu	répondras
il/elle/on	répondra
nous	répondrons
vous	répondrez
ils/elles	répondront

IMPERATIVE

réponds / répondons / répondez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

répondant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Lisez le texte et **répondez** aux questions. Read the text and answer the questions.
 C'est elle qui **a répondu** au téléphone. She answered the phone.
 Ça ne **répond** pas. There's no reply.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

► **résoudre** (to solve)**PRESENT**

je	résous
tu	résous
il/elle/on	résout
nous	résolvons
vous	résolvez
ils/elles	résolvent

PERFECT

j'	ai résolu
tu	as résolu
il/elle/on	a résolu
nous	avons résolu
vous	avez résolu
ils/elles	ont résolu

FUTURE

je	résoudrai
tu	résoudras
il/elle/on	résoudra
nous	résoudrons
vous	résoudrez
ils/elles	résoudront

IMPERATIVE

résous / résolvons / résolvez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

résolvant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

J'**ai résolu** le problème. I've solved the problem.
 La violence ne **résout** rien. Violence doesn't solve anything.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	réponde
tu	répondes
il/elle/on	réponde
nous	répondions
vous	répondiez
ils/elles	répondent

IMPERFECT

je	répondais
tu	répondais
il/elle/on	répondait
nous	répondions
vous	répondiez
ils/elles	répondaient

CONDITIONAL

je	répondrais
tu	répondrais
il/elle/on	répondrait
nous	répondrions
vous	répondriez
ils/elles	répondraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

répondu

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	résolve
tu	résolves
il/elle/on	résolve
nous	résolvions
vous	résolviez
ils/elles	résolvent

IMPERFECT

je	résolvais
tu	résolvais
il/elle/on	résolvait
nous	résolvions
vous	résolviez
ils/elles	résolvaient

CONDITIONAL

je	résoudrais
tu	résoudrais
il/elle/on	résoudrait
nous	résoudrions
vous	résoudriez
ils/elles	résoudraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

résolu

► **rester** (to remain)**PRESENT**

je	reste
tu	restes
il/elle/on	reste
nous	restons
vous	restez
ils/elles	restent

PERFECT

je	suis resté(e)
tu	es resté(e)
il/elle/on	est resté(e)
nous	sommes resté(e)s
vous	êtes resté(e)s
ils/elles	sont resté(e)s

FUTURE

je	resterais
tu	resteras
il/elle/on	restera
nous	resterons
vous	resterez
ils/elles	restent

IMPERATIVE

reste / restons / restez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

restant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	reste
tu	restes
il/elle/on	reste
nous	restions
vous	restiez
ils/elles	restent

IMPERFECT

je	restais
tu	restais
il/elle/on	restait
nous	restions
vous	restiez
ils/elles	restaient

CONDITIONAL

je	resterais
tu	resterais
il/elle/on	resterait
nous	resterions
vous	resteriez
ils/elles	resteraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

resté

EXAMPLE PHRASES

*Cet été, je reste en Écosse. I'm staying in Scotland this summer.
Ils ne sont pas restés très longtemps. They didn't stay very long.
Il leur restait encore un peu d'argent. They still had some money left.*

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

► **retourner** (to return)**PRESENT**

je	retourne
tu	retournes
il/elle/on	retourne
nous	retournons
vous	retournez
ils/elles	retournent

PERFECT

je	suis retourné(e)
tu	es retourné(e)
il/elle/on	est retourné(e)
nous	sommes retourné(e)s
vous	êtes retourné(e)s
ils/elles	sont retourné(e)s

FUTURE

je	retournerai
tu	retourneras
il/elle/on	retournera
nous	retournerons
vous	retournerez
ils/elles	retourneront

IMPERATIVE

retourne / retournons / retournez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

retournant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	retourne
tu	retournes
il/elle/on	retourne
nous	retournions
vous	retourniez
ils/elles	retournent

IMPERFECT

je	retournais
tu	retournais
il/elle/on	retournait
nous	retournions
vous	retourniez
ils/elles	retournaient

CONDITIONAL


je	retournerais
tu	retournerais
il/elle/on	retournerait
nous	retournerions
vous	retourneriez
ils/elles	retourneraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

retourné

EXAMPLE PHRASES

*Est-ce que tu es retournée à Londres? Have you been back to London?
J'aimerais bien retourner en Italie un jour. I'd like to go back to Italy one day.
Elle a retourné la carte pour vérifier. She turned the card over to check.
Zoë, retourne-toi! Turn around Zoë!*

 Note that **retourner** takes **avoir** in the perfect tense when it is used with a direct object; see page 114.

➡ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb **se retourner**.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

► **revenir** (to come back)**PRESENT**

je	reviens
tu	reviens
il/elle/on	revient
nous	revenons
vous	revenez
ils/elles	reviennent

PERFECT

je	suis revenu(e)
tu	es revenu(e)
il/elle/on	est revenu(e)
nous	sommes revenu(e)s
vous	êtes revenu(e)s
ils/elles	sont revenu(e)s

FUTURE

je	reviendrai
tu	reviendras
il/elle/on	reviendra
nous	reviendrons
vous	reviendrez
ils/elles	reviendront

IMPERATIVE

reviens / revenons / revenez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

revenant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	revienne
tu	reviennes
il/elle/on	revienne
nous	revenions
vous	reveniez
ils/elles	reviennent

IMPERFECT

je	revenais
tu	revenais
il/elle/on	revenait
nous	revenions
vous	reveniez
ils/elles	revenaient

CONDITIONAL

je	reviendrais
tu	reviendrais
il/elle/on	reviendrait
nous	reviendrions
vous	reviendriez
ils/elles	reviendraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

revenu

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Mon chat n'est toujours pas revenu. My cat still hasn't come back.
Je reviens dans cinq minutes! I'll be back in five minutes!
Ça me revient! It's coming back to me now!

► **rire** (to laugh)**PRESENT**

je	ris
tu	ris
il/elle/on	rit
nous	riions
vous	riez
ils/elles	rient

PERFECT

j'	ai ri
tu	as ri
il/elle/on	a ri
nous	avons ri
vous	avez ri
ils/elles	ont ri

FUTURE

je	rirai
tu	riras
il/elle/on	rira
nous	rirons
vous	rirez
ils/elles	riront

IMPERATIVE

ris / rions / riez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

riant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	rie
tu	ries
il/elle/on	rie
nous	riions
vous	riiez
ils/elles	rient

IMPERFECT

je	riais
tu	riais
il/elle/on	riaît
nous	riions
vous	riiez
ils/elles	riaient

CONDITIONAL

je	rirais
tu	rirais
il/elle/on	rirait
nous	ririons
vous	ririez
ils/elles	riraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

ri

EXAMPLE PHRASES

On a bien ri. We had a good laugh.
Ne ris pas, ce n'est pas drôle! Don't laugh, it's not funny!
C'était juste pour rire. It was only for a laugh.

► **rompre** (to break)**PRESENT**

je	romps
tu	romps
il/elle/on	rompt
nous	rompons
vous	rompez
ils/elles	rompent

PERFECT

j'	ai rompu
tu	as rompu
il/elle/on	a rompu
nous	avons rompu
vous	avez rompu
ils/elles	ont rompu

FUTURE

je	romprai
tu	rompras
il/elle/on	rompra
nous	romprons
vous	romprez
ils/elles	rompront

IMPERATIVE

romps / rompons / rompez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

rompant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Elle **a rompu** le silence. She broke the silence.
 Paul et Jo **ont rompu**. Paul and Jo have split up.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	rompe
tu	rompes
il/elle/on	rompe
nous	rompions
vous	rompiez
ils/elles	rompent

IMPERFECT

je	rompais
tu	rompais
il/elle/on	rompait
nous	rompions
vous	rompiez
ils/elles	rompaient

CONDITIONAL

je	romprais
tu	romprais
il/elle/on	romprait
nous	romprions
vous	rompiez
ils/elles	rompraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

rompu

► **savoir** (to know)**PRESENT**

je	sais
tu	sais
il/elle/on	sait
nous	savons
vous	savez
ils/elles	savent

PERFECT

j'	ai su
tu	as su
il/elle/on	a su
nous	avons su
vous	avez su
ils/elles	ont su

FUTURE

je	saurai
tu	sauras
il/elle/on	saura
nous	saurons
vous	sauriez
ils/elles	sauront

IMPERATIVE

sache / sachons / sachez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

sachant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Tu **sais** ce que tu vas faire l'année prochaine? Do you know what you're doing next year?
 Je **ne sais pas**. I don't know.
 Elle **ne sait pas nager**. She can't swim.
 Tu **savais** que son père était pakistanais? Did you know her father was Pakistani?

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	sache
tu	saches
il/elle/on	sache
nous	sachions
vous	sachiez
ils/elles	sachent

IMPERFECT

je	savais
tu	savais
il/elle/on	savait
nous	savions
vous	saviez
ils/elles	savaient

CONDITIONAL

je	saurais
tu	saurais
il/elle/on	saurait
nous	saurions
vous	sauriez
ils/elles	sauraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

su

► **sentir** (to smell; to feel)**PRESENT**

je	sens
tu	sens
il/elle/on	sent
nous	sentons
vous	sentez
ils/elles	sentent

PERFECT

j'	ai senti
tu	as senti
il/elle/on	a senti
nous	avons senti
vous	avez senti
ils/elles	ont senti

FUTURE

je	sentirai
tu	sentiras
il/elle/on	sentira
nous	sentirons
vous	sentirez
ils/elles	sentiront

IMPERATIVE

sens / sentons / sentez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

sentant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	sente
tu	sentes
il/elle/on	sente
nous	sentions
vous	sentiez
ils/elles	sentent

IMPERFECT

je	sentais
tu	sentais
il/elle/on	sentait
nous	sentions
vous	sentiez
ils/elles	sentaient

CONDITIONAL

je	sentirais
tu	sentirais
il/elle/on	sentirait
nous	sentirions
vous	sentiriez
ils/elles	sentiraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

senti

EXAMPLE PHRASESÇa **sentait** mauvais. It smelt bad.Je **n'ai rien senti**. I didn't feel a thing.Elle **ne se sent pas bien**. She's not feeling well.➡ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb **se sentir**.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

► **servir** (to serve)**PRESENT**

je	sers
tu	sers
il/elle/on	sert
nous	servons
vous	servez
ils/elles	servent

PERFECT

j'	ai servi
tu	as servi
il/elle/on	a servi
nous	avons servi
vous	avez servi
ils/elles	ont servi

FUTURE

je	servirai
tu	serviras
il/elle/on	servira
nous	servirons
vous	servirez
ils/elles	serviront

IMPERATIVE

sers / servons / servez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

servant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	serve
tu	erves
il/elle/on	serve
nous	servions
vous	serviez
ils/elles	servent

IMPERFECT

je	servais
tu	servais
il/elle/on	servait
nous	servions
vous	serviez
ils/elles	servaient

CONDITIONAL

je	servirais
tu	servirais
il/elle/on	servirait
nous	servirions
vous	serviriez
ils/elles	serviraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

servi

EXAMPLE PHRASESOn vous **sert**? Are you being served?Ça **sert** à quoi ce bouton? What is this button for?**Servez-vous en viande**. Help yourself to meat.➡ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb **se servir**.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

► **sortir** (to go out)**PRESENT**

je	sors
tu	sors
il/elle/on	sort
nous	sortons
vous	sortez
ils/elles	sortent

PERFECT

je	suis sorti(e)
tu	es sorti(e)
il/elle/on	est sorti(e)
nous	sommes sorti(e)s
vous	êtes sorti(e)s
ils/elles	sont sorti(e)s

FUTURE

je	sortirai
tu	sortiras
il/elle/on	sortira
nous	sortirons
vous	sortirez
ils/elles	sortiront

IMPERATIVE

sors / sortons / sortez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

sortant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	sorte
tu	sortes
il/elle/on	sorte
nous	sortions
vous	sortiez
ils/elles	sortent

IMPERFECT

je	sortais
tu	sortais
il/elle/on	sortait
nous	sortions
vous	sortiez
ils/elles	sortaient

CONDITIONAL

je	sortirais
tu	sortirais
il/elle/on	sortirait
nous	sortirions
vous	sortiriez
ils/elles	sortiraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

sorti

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Je ne suis pas sortie ce week-end. I didn't go out this weekend.
Aurélie sort avec Bruno. Aurélie is going out with Bruno.
Elle est sortie de l'hôpital hier. She came out of hospital yesterday.
Je n'ai pas sorti le chien parce qu'il pleuvait. I didn't take the dog out for a walk because it was raining.

🔍 Note that **sortir** takes **avoir** in the perfect tense when it is used with a direct object; see page 114.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

► **suffire** (to be enough)**PRESENT**

je	suffis
tu	suffis
il/elle/on	suffit
nous	suffisons
vous	suffisez
ils/elles	suffisent

PERFECT

j'	ai suffi
tu	as suffi
il/elle/on	a suffi
nous	avons suffi
vous	avez suffi
ils/elles	ont suffi

FUTURE

je	suffirai
tu	suffiras
il/elle/on	suffira
nous	suffirons
vous	suffirez
ils/elles	suffiront

IMPERATIVE

suffis / suffisons / suffisez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

suffisant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Ça te suffit, 10 euros? Will 10 euros be enough?
Ça suffit! That's enough!
Il suffisait de me le demander. You only had to ask.

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	suffise
tu	suffises
il/elle/on	suffise
nous	suffisions
vous	suffisiez
ils/elles	suffissent

IMPERFECT

je	suffisais
tu	suffisais
il/elle/on	suffisait
nous	suffisions
vous	suffisiez
ils/elles	suffisaient

CONDITIONAL

je	suffirais
tu	suffirais
il/elle/on	suffirait
nous	suffirions
vous	suffiriez
ils/elles	suffiraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

suffi

► **suivre** (to follow)**PRESENT**

je	suis
tu	suis
il/elle/on	suit
nous	suivons
vous	suivez
ils/elles	suivent

PERFECT

j'	ai suivi
tu	as suivi
il/elle/on	a suivi
nous	avons suivi
vous	avez suivi
ils/elles	ont suivi

FUTURE

je	suivrai
tu	suivras
il/elle/on	suivra
nous	suivrons
vous	suivrez
ils/elles	suivront

IMPERATIVE

suis / suivons / suivez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

suivant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Mon chat me suit partout dans la maison. My cat follows me everywhere around the house.

Il a suivi un cours d'allemand pendant six mois. He did a German course for 6 months.
Elles n'arrivent pas à suivre en maths. They can't keep up in maths.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	suive
tu	suives
il/elle/on	suive
nous	suivions
vous	suiviez
ils/elles	suivent

IMPERFECT

je	suivais
tu	suivais
il/elle/on	suivait
nous	suivions
vous	suiviez
ils/elles	suivaient

CONDITIONAL

je	suivrais
tu	suivrais
il/elle/on	suivrait
nous	suivrions
vous	suivriez
ils/elles	suivraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

suivi

► **se taire** (to stop talking)**PRESENT**

je	me tais
tu	te tais
il/elle/on	se tait
nous	nous taisons
vous	vous taisez
ils/elles	se taisent

PERFECT

je	me suis tu(e)
tu	t'es tu(e)
il/elle/on	s'est tu(e)
nous	nous sommes tu(e)s
vous	vous êtes tu(e)s
ils/elles	se sont tu(e)s

FUTURE

je	me tairai
tu	te tairas
il/elle/on	se taira
nous	nous tairons
vous	vous tairez
ils/elles	se tairont

IMPERATIVE

tais-toi / taisons-nous / taisez-vous

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

se taisant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Il s'est tu. He stopped talking.

Taisez-vous! Be quiet!

Sophie, tais-toi! Be quiet Sophie!

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	me taise
tu	te taises
il/elle/on	se taise
nous	nous taisions
vous	vous taisiez
ils/elles	se taisent

IMPERFECT

je	me taisais
tu	te taisais
il/elle/on	se taisait
nous	nous taisions
vous	vous taisiez
ils/elles	se taisaient

CONDITIONAL

je	me tairais
tu	te tairais
il/elle/on	se tairait
nous	nous tairions
vous	vous tairiez
ils/elles	se tairaient

PAST PARTICIPLE

tu

► **tenir** (to hold)**PRESENT**

je	tiens
tu	tiens
il/elle/on	tient
nous	tenons
vous	tenez
ils/elles	tiennent

PERFECT

j'	ai tenu
tu	as tenu
il/elle/on	a tenu
nous	avons tenu
vous	avez tenu
ils/elles	ont tenu

FUTURE

je	tiendrai
tu	tiendras
il/elle/on	tiendra
nous	tiendrons
vous	tiendrez
ils/elles	tiendront

IMPERATIVE

tiens / tenons / tenez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

tenant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	tienne
tu	tiennes
il/elle/on	tienne
nous	tenions
vous	teniez
ils/elles	tiennent

IMPERFECT

je	tenais
tu	tenais
il/elle/on	tenait
nous	tenions
vous	teniez
ils/elles	tenaient

CONDITIONAL

je	tiendrais
tu	tiendrais
il/elle/on	tiendrait
nous	tiendrions
vous	tiendriez
ils/elles	tiendraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

tenu

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Tiens-moi la main.* Hold my hand.*Elle tenait beaucoup à son chat.* She was really attached to her cat.*Tiens, prends mon stylo.* Here, have my pen.*Tiens-toi droit!* Sit up straight!⇒ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb *se tenir*.► **tomber** (to fall)**PRESENT**

je	tombe
tu	tombes
il/elle/on	tombe
nous	tombons
vous	tombez
ils/elles	tombent

PERFECT

je	suis tombé(e)
tu	es tombé(e)
il/elle/on	est tombé(e)
nous	sommes tombé(e)s
vous	êtes tombé(e)s
ils/elles	sont tombé(e)s

FUTURE

je	tomberai
tu	tomberas
il/elle/on	tombera
nous	tomberons
vous	tomberez
ils/elles	tomberont

IMPERATIVE

tombe / tombons / tombez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

tombant

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Attention, tu vas tomber!* Be careful, you'll fall!*Nicole est tombée de cheval.* Nicole fell off her horse.*Elle s'est fait mal en tombant dans l'escalier.* She hurt herself falling down the stairs.**PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE**

je	tombe
tu	tombes
il/elle/on	tombe
nous	tombions
vous	tombiez
ils/elles	tombent

IMPERFECT

je	tombais
tu	tombais
il/elle/on	tombait
nous	tombions
vous	tombiez
ils/elles	tombaient

CONDITIONAL

je	tomberais
tu	tomberais
il/elle/on	tomberait
nous	tomberions
vous	tomberiez
ils/elles	tomberaient

PAST PARTICIPLE

tombé

► **traire** (to milk)**PRESENT**

je	trais
tu	trais
il/elle/on	traît
nous	trayons
vous	trayez
ils/elles	traient

PERFECT

j'	ai traît
tu	as traît
il/elle/on	a traît
nous	avons traît
vous	avez traît
ils/elles	ont traît

FUTURE

je	trairai
tu	trairas
il/elle/on	traira
nous	trairons
vous	trairez
ils/elles	trairont

IMPERATIVE

trais / trayons / trayez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

trayant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

À la ferme, on a appris à **traire** les vaches. We learnt to milk cows on the farm.
Elle **traît** les vaches à six heures du matin. She milks the cows at 6 am.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	traie
tu	traies
il/elle/on	traie
nous	trayions
vous	trayiez
ils/elles	traient

IMPERFECT

je	trayais
tu	trayais
il/elle/on	trayait
nous	trayions
vous	trayiez
ils/elles	trayaient

CONDITIONAL

je	trairais
tu	trairais
il/elle/on	trairait
nous	trairions
vous	trairiez
ils/elles	trairaient

PAST PARTICIPLE

traît

► **vaincre** (to defeat)**PRESENT**

je	vaincs
tu	vaincs
il/elle/on	vainc
nous	vainquons
vous	vainquez
ils/elles	vainquent

PERFECT

j'	ai vaincu
tu	as vaincu
il/elle/on	a vaincu
nous	avons vaincu
vous	avez vaincu
ils/elles	ont vaincu

FUTURE

je	vaincrai
tu	vaincras
il/elle/on	vaincra
nous	vaincrons
vous	vaincrez
ils/elles	vaincront

IMPERATIVE

vaincs / vainquons / vainquez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

vainquant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

L'armée **a été vaincue**. The army was defeated.
La France **a vaincu** la Corée trois buts à deux. France beat Korea 3 goals to 2.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	vainque
tu	vainques
il/elle/on	vainque
nous	vainquions
vous	vainquiez
ils/elles	vainquent

IMPERFECT

je	vainquais
tu	vainquais
il/elle/on	vainquait
nous	vainquions
vous	vainquiez
ils/elles	vainquaient

CONDITIONAL

je	vaincrais
tu	vaincrais
il/elle/on	vaincrait
nous	vaincristions
vous	vaincriez
ils/elles	vaincraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

vaincu

► **valoir** (to be worth)**PRESENT**

je	vaux
tu	vaux
il/elle/on	vaut
nous	valons
vous	valez
ils/elles	valent

PERFECT

j'	ai valu
tu	as valu
il/elle/on	a valu
nous	avons valu
vous	avez valu
ils/elles	ont valu

FUTURE

je	vaudrai
tu	vaudras
il/elle/on	vaudra
nous	vaudrons
vous	vaudrez
ils/elles	vaudront

IMPERATIVE

vaux / valons / valez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

valant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	vaille
tu	ailles
il/elle/on	vaille
nous	valions
vous	valiez
ils/elles	vaillent

IMPERFECT

je	valais
tu	valais
il/elle/on	valait
nous	valions
vous	valiez
ils/elles	valaient

CONDITIONAL

je	vaudrais
tu	vaudrais
il/elle/on	vaudrait
nous	vaudrions
vous	vaudriez
ils/elles	vaudraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

valu

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Ça vaut combien?* How much is it worth?*Ça vaudrait la peine d'essayer.* It would be worth a try.*Il vaut mieux ne pas y penser.* It's best not to think about it.► **vendre** (to sell)**PRESENT**

je	vends
tu	vends
il/elle/on	vend
nous	vendons
vous	vendez
ils/elles	vendent

PERFECT

j'	ai vendu
tu	as vendu
il/elle/on	a vendu
nous	avons vendu
vous	avez vendu
ils/elles	ont vendu

FUTURE

je	vendrai
tu	vendras
il/elle/on	vendra
nous	vendrons
vous	vendrez
ils/elles	vendront

IMPERATIVE

vends / vendons / vendez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

vendant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	vende
tu	vendes
il/elle/on	vende
nous	vendions
vous	vendiez
ils/elles	vendent

IMPERFECT

je	vendais
tu	vendais
il/elle/on	vendait
nous	vendions
vous	vendiez
ils/elles	vendaient

CONDITIONAL

je	vendrais
tu	vendrais
il/elle/on	vendrait
nous	vendrions
vous	vendriez
ils/elles	vendraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

vendu

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Il m'a vendu son vélo pour 50 euros.* He sold me his bike for 50 euros.*Est-ce que vous vendez des piles?* Do you sell batteries?*Elle voudrait vendre sa voiture.* She would like to sell her car.

► **venir** (to come)**PRESENT**

je	viens
tu	viens
il/elle/on	vient
nous	venons
vous	venez
ils/elles	viennent

PERFECT

je	suis venu(e)
tu	es venu(e)
il/elle/on	est venu(e)
nous	sommes venu(e)s
vous	êtes venu(e)s
ils/elles	sont venu(e)s

FUTURE

je	viendrai
tu	viendras
il/elle/on	viendra
nous	viendrons
vous	viendrez
ils/elles	viendront

IMPERATIVE

viens / venons / venez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

venant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	vienne
tu	viennes
il/elle/on	vienne
nous	venions
vous	veniez
ils/elles	viennent

IMPERFECT

je	venais
tu	venais
il/elle/on	venait
nous	venions
vous	veniez
ils/elles	venaient

CONDITIONAL

je	viendrais
tu	viendrais
il/elle/on	viendrait
nous	viendrions
vous	viendriez
ils/elles	viendraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

venu

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Elle ne **viendra** pas cette année. She won't be coming this year.
 Fatou et Malik **viennent** du Sénégal. Fatou and Malik come from Senegal.
 Je **viens** de manger. I've just eaten.

► **vêtir** (to dress)**PRESENT**

je	vêts
tu	vêts
il/elle/on	vêt
nous	vêtons
vous	vêtez
ils/elles	vêtent

PERFECT

j'	ai vêtu
tu	as vêtu
il/elle/on	a vêtu
nous	avons vêtu
vous	avez vêtu
ils/elles	ont vêtu

FUTURE

je	vêtirai
tu	vêtiras
il/elle/on	vêtira
nous	vêtrons
vous	vêtirez
ils/elles	vêtiront

IMPERATIVE

vêts / vêtons / vêtez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

vêtant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Il **était vêtu** d'un pantalon et d'un pull. He was wearing trousers and a jumper.
 Il faut se lever, se laver et **se vêtir** en 10 minutes. You have to get up, get washed
 and get dressed in 10 minutes.

➡ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb **se vêtir**.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	vête
tu	vêtes
il/elle/on	vête
nous	vêtions
vous	vétiez
ils/elles	vêtent

IMPERFECT

je	vêtais
tu	vêtais
il/elle/on	vêtait
nous	vétions
vous	vétiez
ils/elles	vêtaient

CONDITIONAL

je	vêtirais
tu	vêtirais
il/elle/on	vêtirait
nous	vêtrions
vous	vêtiriez
ils/elles	vêtiraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

vêtu

► **vivre** (to live)**PRESENT**

je	vis
tu	vis
il/elle/on	vit
nous	vivons
vous	vivez
ils/elles	vivent

PERFECT

j'	ai vécu
tu	as vécu
il/elle/on	a vécu
nous	avons vécu
vous	avez vécu
ils/elles	ont vécu

FUTURE

je	vivrai
tu	vivras
il/elle/on	vivra
nous	vivrons
vous	vivrez
ils/elles	vivront

IMPERATIVE

vis / vivons / vivez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

vivant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	vive
tu	vives
il/elle/on	vive
nous	vivions
vous	viviez
ils/elles	vivent

IMPERFECT

je	vivais
tu	vivais
il/elle/on	vivait
nous	vivions
vous	viviez
ils/elles	vivaient

CONDITIONAL

je	vivrais
tu	vivrais
il/elle/on	vivrait
nous	vivrions
vous	vivriez
ils/elles	vivraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

vécu

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Ma sœur vit en Espagne.* My sister lives in Spain.*Il a vécu dix ans à Lyon.* He lived in Lyons for 10 years.*Les gorilles vivent surtout dans la forêt.* Gorillas mostly live in the forest.► **voir** (to see)**PRESENT**

je	vois
tu	vois
il/elle/on	voit
nous	voyons
vous	voyez
ils/elles	voient

PERFECT

j'	ai vu
tu	as vu
il/elle/on	a vu
nous	avons vu
vous	avez vu
ils/elles	ont vu

FUTURE

je	verrai
tu	verras
il/elle/on	verra
nous	verrons
vous	verrez
ils/elles	verront

IMPERATIVE

vois / voyons / voyez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

voyant

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	voie
tu	voies
il/elle/on	voie
nous	voyions
vous	voyiez
ils/elles	voient

IMPERFECT

je	voyais
tu	voyais
il/elle/on	voyait
nous	voyions
vous	voyiez
ils/elles	voyaient

CONDITIONAL

je	verrais
tu	verrais
il/elle/on	verrait
nous	verrions
vous	verriez
ils/elles	verraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

vu

EXAMPLE PHRASES*Venez me voir quand vous serez à Paris.* Come and see me when you're in Paris.*Je ne vois rien sans mes lunettes.* I can't see anything without my glasses.*Est-ce que tu l'as vu?* Did you see him? or Have you seen him?*Est-ce que cette tache se voit?* Does that stain show?➡ See pages 88–91 for information on how to form the reflexive verb *se voir*.

► **vouloir** (to want)**PRESENT**

je	veux
tu	veux
il/elle/on	veut
nous	voulons
vous	voulez
ils/elles	veulent

PERFECT

j'	ai voulu
tu	as voulu
il/elle/on	a voulu
nous	avons voulu
vous	avez voulu
ils/elles	ont voulu

FUTURE

je	voudrai
tu	voudras
il/elle/on	voudra
nous	voudrons
vous	voudrez
ils/elles	voudront

IMPERATIVE

veuille / veuillons / veuillez

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

voulant

EXAMPLE PHRASES

Elle veut un vélo pour Noël. She wants a bike for Christmas.
Ils voulaient aller au cinéma. They wanted to go to the cinema.
Tu voudrais une tasse de thé? Would you like a cup of tea?

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

je	veuille
tu	veuilles
il/elle/on	veuille
nous	voulions
vous	vouliez
ils/elles	veuillent

IMPERFECT

je	voulais
tu	voulais
il/elle/on	voulait
nous	voulions
vous	vouliez
ils/elles	voulaient

CONDITIONAL

je	voudrais
tu	voudrais
il/elle/on	voudrait
nous	voudrions
vous	voudriez
ils/elles	voudraient

PAST PARTICIPLE

voulu

je/j' = I tu = you il = he/it elle = she/it on = we/one nous = we vous = you ils/elles = they

How to use the Verb Index

The verbs in bold are the model verbs which you will find in the verb tables. All the other verbs follow one of these patterns, so the number next to each verb indicates which pattern fits this particular verb. For example, **aider** (to help) follows the same pattern as **donner** (number 29 in the verb tables).

All the verbs are in alphabetical order. For reflexive verbs like **s'asseoir** (to sit down) or **se taire** (to stop talking), look under **asseoir** or **taire**, not under **s'** or **se**.

Superior numbers (¹, ² etc) refer you to notes on page 107. These notes explain any differences between the verbs and their model.

With the exception of reflexive verbs which *always* take **être**, all verbs have the same auxiliary (**être** or **avoir**) as their model verb. There are a few exceptions which are indicated by a superior number ¹ or ².

An asterisk (*) means that the verb takes **avoir** when it is used with a direct object, and **être** when it isn't.

⇒ For more information on verbs that take either **avoir** or **être**, see page 114.

abaisser	36	accomplir	39	adorer	29	aiguiser	29
abandonner	29	accorder	29	adosser	29	aimer	29
abattre	10	accoter	29	adoucir	39	ajouter	29
abêtir	39	accoucher	29	adresser	29	ajuster	29
abîmer	29	accouder (s')	29	advenir ³	90	alarmer	29
abolir	39	accourir ⁵	17	aérer	35	alerter	29
abonder	29	accoutumer	29	affaiblir	39	alimenter	29
abonner	29	accrocher	29	affairer (s')	29	allécher	35
aborder	29	accroître ⁶	22	affaïsser (s')	29	alléger	67
aboutir	39	accroupir (s')	39	affamer	29	alléguer	35
aboyer	54	accueillir	23	affermir	39	aller	4
abréger	67	accumuler	29	afficher	29	allier	20
abreuver	29	accuser	29	affirmer	29	allumer	29
abriter	29	acharner (s')	29	affliger	46	altérer	35
abrutir	39	acheminer	29	affoler	29	alterner	29
absenter (s')	29	acheter	2	affranchir	39	alunir	39
absorber	29	achever	44	affréter	35	amaigrir	39
absoudre ⁴	71	acquérir	3	affronter	29	ambitionner	29
abstenir (s')	84	actionner	29	agacer	29	améliorer	29
abstraire	86	activer	29	agenouiller (s')	29	aménager	46
abuser	29	adapter	29	agir	39	amener	44
accabler	29	additionner	29	agiter	29	ameuter	29
accaparer	29	adhérer	35	agrandir	39	amincir	39
accéder	35	adjoindre	43	ahurir	39	amoindrir	39
accélérer	35	admettre	48	aider	29	amollir	39
accepter	29	admirer	29	aigrir	39	amonceler	5
accompagner	29	adopter	29				

amorcer	13	assembler	29	balader (se)	29	bouffir	39
amplifier	20	assener	44	balafrer	29	bouger	46
amputer	29	asseoir (s')	7	balancer	13	bouillir	12
amuser	29	asservir	39	balayer	60	bouleverser	29
analyser	29	assiéger	67	balbutier	20	boulonner	29
anéantir	39	assigner	29	baliser	29	bourdonner	29
angoisser	29	assimiler	29	bannir	39	bourrer	29
animer	29	assister	29	baptiser	29	boursoufler	29
annexer	29	associer	20	baratiner	29	bousculer	29
annoncer	13	assombrir	39	barbouiller	29	bousiller	29
annoter	29	assommer	29	barioler	29	boutonner	29
annuler	29	assortir	39	barrir	29	braconner	29
anoblir	39	assoupir	39	barricader	29	brailler	29
anticiper	29	assouplir	39	basculer	29	braire ⁷	86
apaiser	29	assourdir	39	baser	29	brancher	29
apercevoir	68	assujettir	39	batailler	29	brandir	39
apitoyer	54	assumer	29	batifoler	29	branler	29
aplatir	39	assurer	29	bâtir	39	braquer	29
apparaître ²	57	astiquer	29	battre	10	braver	29
appareiller	29	astreindre	61	bavarder	29	bredouiller	29
apparenter	29	atermoyer	54	baver	29	breveter	5
appariar	20	attabler (s')	29	bêcher	29	bricoler	29
appartenir	84	attacher	29	becqueter	42	brider	29
appauvrir	39	attaquer	29	bégayer	60	briguer	29
appeler	5	atteindre	61	bêler	29	briller	29
applaudir	39	atteler	5	bénéficier	20	brimer	29
appliquer	29	attendre	8	bénir	39	briser	29
apporter	29	attendrir	39	bercer	13	broder	29
apprécier	20	atterrir	39	berner	29	broncher	29
apprendre	66	attirer	29	beugler	29	brosser	29
apprêter	29	attraper	29	beurrer	29	brouiller	29
apprivoiser	29	attribuer	29	biaiser	29	broyer	54
approcher	29	augmenter	29	bichonner	29	brûler	29
approfondir	39	autoriser	29	biffer	29	brunir	39
appropriier	20	avachir (s')	39	blaguer	29	buter	29
approuver	29	avalier	29	blâmer	29	cabrer (se)	29
appuyer	54	avancer	13	blanchir	39	cacher	29
arc-bouter	29	avantager	46	blaser	29	cadrer	29
argenter	29	aventurer	29	blêmir	39	cajoler	29
arguer	29	avertir	39	blesser	29	calculer	29
armer	29	aveugler	29	bloquer	29	caler	29
arpenter	29	avilir	39	bloquer (se)	39	caliner	29
arracher	29	aviser	29	boire	11	calmer	29
arranger	46	aviver	29	boiter	29	calomnier	20
arrêter	29	avoir	9	bombarder	29	calquer	29
arriver	6	avouer	29	bondir	39	camper	29
arrondir	39	bâcler	29	bonifier	20	capituler	29
arroser	29	bafouer	29	border	29	capter	29
asphyxier	20	bagarrer (se)	29	borner	29	captiver	29
aspirer	29	baigner	29	boucher	29	capturer	29
assagir	39	bâiller	29	boucler	29	caractériser	29
assainir	39	baiser	29	bouder	29	caresser	29
assassiner	29	baisser	29	bouffer	29	caricaturer	29

caser	29	coincer	13	conseiller	29	crépir	39
casser	29	coïncider	29	consentir	78	creuser	29
cataloguer	29	collaborer	29	considérer	35	crever	44
catapulter	29	collectionner	29	consister	29	cribler	29
causer	29	coller	29	consoler	29	crier	20
céder	35	coloniser	29	consolider	29	critiquer	29
ceindre	61	colorer	29	consommer	29	crocheter	2
célébrer	35	colorier	20	conspirer	29	croire	21
celer	2	combattre	10	constater	29	croiser	29
censurer	29	comblar	29	consterner	29	croître	22
cercler	29	commander	29	constituer	29	crouler	29
certifier	20	commémorer	29	construire	24	croupir	39
cesser	29	commencer	13	consulter	29	crucifier	20
chagriner	29	commettre	48	contacter	29	cueillir	23
chahuter	29	communier	20	contaminer	29	cuire	24
chamailler	29	communiquer	29	contempler	29	culbuter	29
chanceler	5	comparaître	57	contenir	84	cultiver	29
changer	46	comparer	29	contenter	29	cumuler	29
chanter	29	compenser	29	curer	29	curer	29
chantonner	29	complaître	63	contester	29	daigner	29
charger	46	compléter	35	continuer	29	damner	29
charmer	29	complimenter	29	contraindre	18	danser	29
charrier	20	compliquer	29	contrarier	20	dater	29
chasser	29	comporter	29	contraster	29	débarquer	29
châtier	20	composer	29	contredire	28	débarrasser	29
chatouiller	29	composter	29	contrefaire	37	débattre	10
chauffer	29	comprendre	66	contrevenir ¹	90	débaucher	29
chausser	29	compromettre	48	contribuer	29	débiter	29
chercher	29	compter	29	contrôler	29	déblater	35
chérir	39	concéder	35	convaincre	87	déblatérer	29
chiffrer	29	concentrer	29	convenir ¹	90	débloquer	29
choisir	39	concerner	29	convertir	39	déboîter	29
chômer	29	concevoir	68	convier	20	déborder	29
choquer	29	concilier	20	convoquer	29	déboucher	29
choyer	54	conclure	14	coopérer	35	déboursier	29
chuchoter	29	concourir	17	copier	20	déboutonner	29
chircircire ⁸	81	concurrencer	13	correspondre	70	débrailler (se)	29
circonscrire	31	condamner	29	corriger	46	débrancher	29
circonvenir ¹	90	condenser	29	corrompre	76	débrayer	60
circuler	29	condescendre ¹	25	corroyer	54	débrouiller	29
cirer	29	conduire	24	côtoyer	54	débuter	29
ciseler	2	conférer	35	coucher	29	décaler	29
citer	29	confier	20	coudre	16	décanter	29
clarifier	20	confire ⁹	81	couler	29	décaper	29
classer	29	confirmer	29	couper	29	décapoter	29
classifier	20	confisquer	29	courber	29	décéder ²	35
cligner	29	confondre	70	courir	17	déceler	2
clignoter	29	conforter	29	coûter	29	décélérer	35
clouer	29	congédir	20	couvrir	56	décentraliser	29
coder	29	congeler	2	cracher	29	décerner	29
codifier	20	connaître	15	craindre	18	décevoir	68
cogner	29	conquérir	3	craquer	29	déchaîner	29
coiffer	29	consacrer	29	créer	19	décharger	46

déchiffrer	29	dégeler	2	dépeindre	61	désorienter	29
déchiquter	42	dégénérer	35	dépendre	89	dessaisir	39
déchirer	29	dégonfler	29	dépenser	29	dessécher	35
décider	29	dégourdir	39	dépérir	39	desserrer	29
décimer	29	dégoûter	29	dépister	29	dessiner	29
déclamer	29	dégrader	29	déplacer	13	destiner	29
déclarer	29	dégringoler	29	déplaier	63	destituer	29
déclasser	29	dégriser	29	dépier	20	désunir	39
déclencher	29	déguerpier	39	déployer	54	détacher	29
décliner	29	déguiser	29	dépolir	39	détailler	29
décoder	29	déguster	29	déposer	29	détecter	29
décolérer	35	déjeter	42	dépouiller	29	déteindre	61
décoller	29	déjeuner	29	dépoussiérer	35	dételer	5
décommander	29	déjouer	29	déprécier	20	détendre	89
déconcerter	29	délaisser	29	déprendre	66	détenir	84
déconseiller	29	délayer	60	déprimer	29	détériorer	29
décontracter	29	déléguer	35	déraciner	29	déterminer	29
décorer	29	délibérer	35	déranger	46	détester	29
découdre	16	déliier	20	déraper	29	détordre	50
découler	29	délirer	29	dérégler	35	détourner	29
découper	29	délivrer	29	dérôger	46	détraquer	29
décourager	46	déloger	46	dérôler	29	détromper	29
découvrir	56	demander	29	dérouter	29	détruire	24
décréter	35	démanteler	2	désaccoutumer	29	dévaler	29
décrier	20	démarquer	29	désagréger	67	devancer	13
décrire	31	démarrer	29	désaltérer	35	développer	29
décrocher	29	démêler	29	désamorcer	13	devenir	26
décroître ¹⁰	22	déménager	46	désapprendre	66	déverser	29
dédaigner	29	démener (se)	44	désapprouver	29	dévêtir	91
dédicacer	13	démentir	78	désassortir	39	dévier	20
dédier	20	démettre	48	désavantager	46	deviner	29
dédire	28	demeurer ¹¹	29	désavouer	29	dévisser	29
dédommager	46	démissionner	29	descendre*	25	dévoiler	29
dédouaner	29	démolir	39	désemparer	29	devoir	27
dédoubler	29	démonter	29	désennuyer	54	dévorier	29
déduire	24	démontrer	29	désensibiliser	29	dévouer	29
défaire	37	démultiplier	20	désentraver	29	dicter	29
défalquer	29	démunir	39	déséquilibrer	29	différer	35
défavoriser	29	dénaturer	29	déserrer	29	diffuser	29
défendre	89	dénier	20	désespérer	35	digérer	35
déféer	35	dénigrer	29	déshabiller	29	diluer	29
déficeler	5	déniveler	5	déshabituier	29	diminuer	29
défier	20	dénombrer	29	déshériter	29	diner	29
défigurer	29	dénoncer	13	désigner	29	dire	28
défiler	29	dénouer	29	désinfecter	29	diriger	46
définir	39	dépanner	29	désintégrer	35	disconvenir	90
défoncer	13	dépaqueter	42	désintéresser	29	discourir	17
déformer	29	départager	46	désintoxiquer	29	discriminer	29
défraîchir	39	départir (se)	58	désirer	29	discuter	29
dégager	46	dépasser	59	désister (se)	29	disjoindre	43
dégainer	29	dépayer	29	désobéir	39	disparaître	57
dégauchir	39	dépecer	44	désoler	29	dispenser	29
dégazonner	29	dépêcher	29	désorganiser	29	disperser	29

disposer	29	effaroucher	29	endormir (s')	30	envoler (s')	29
disputer	29	effectuer	29	enduire	24	envoyer	34
dissocier	20	effeuiller	29	endurcir	39	épandre	89
dissoudre ¹²	71	effondrer	29	énervier	29	épanouir	39
distendre	89	efforcer (s')	13	enfanter	29	épargner	29
distinguer	29	effrayer	60	enfermer	29	éparpiller	29
distordre	50	égaler	29	enfiler	29	épater	29
distraire	86	égarer	29	enflammer	29	épeier	5
distribuer	29	égayer	60	enfler	29	éplucher	29
diversifier	20	égorger	46	enfoncer	13	épouger	46
diviser	29	élaborer	29	enfouir	39	épouser	29
divorcer	13	élancer (s')	13	enfreindre	61	épouvanter	29
donner	29	élargir	39	enfuir (s')	40	éprendre	61
dormir	30	électrifier	20	engager	46	éprendre (s')	66
doubler	29	élever	44	engloutir	39	éprouver	29
douter	29	éliminer	29	engourdir	39	épuiser	29
dresser	29	élire	45	engraisser	29	équilibrer	29
durcir	29	éloigner	29	engueuler	29	équiper	29
durer	39	éluder	29	enivrer	29	équivaloir	88
ébahir (s')	39	émanciper	29	enjoliver	29	esclaffer (s')	29
ébahir (s')	10	émaner	29	enlacer	13	escorter	29
ébaucher	29	embarrasser	29	enlever	44	espérer	35
éblouir	39	embaucher	29	enneiger	46	esquisser	29
ébranler	29	embellir	39	ennuyer	54	esquiver	29
écarteler	2	emboîter	29	énoncer	13	essayer	60
écarter	29	embourgeoiser (s')	29	enquérir (s')	3	essorer	29
échanger	46	embrasser	29	enquêter	29	essouffler	29
échapper	29	émerger	46	enraciner	29	essuyer	54
échauder	29	émettre	48	enrager	46	estimer	29
échauffer	29	émigrer	29	enregistrer	29	estropier	20
échelonner	29	emménager	46	enrichir	39	établir	39
échouer	29	emmener	44	enrouler	29	étaler	29
éclabousser	29	émouvoir	32	enseigner	29	étayer	60
éclaircir	39	emparer (s')	29	ensevelir	39	éteindre	61
éclairer	29	empêcher	29	ensuivre (s') ³	82	étendre	89
éclater	29	empiéter	35	entamer	29	éternuer	29
éclipser	29	empirer	29	entasser	29	étiqueter	42
écœurer	29	emplir	39	entendre	89	étirer	29
éconduire	24	employer	54	enterrer	29	étouffer	29
économiser	29	empoisonner	29	enthousiasmer	29	étonner	29
écorchier	29	emporter	29	entourer	29	étouffer	29
écouler	29	emprisonner	29	entraîner	29	étourdir	39
écouter	29	emprunter	29	entraver	29	étrangler	29
écraser	29	encadrer	29	entrelacer	13	être	36
écrémer	35	encaisser	29	entremettre (s')	48	êtreindre	61
écrier (s')	20	enchaîner	29	entreprendre	66	étudier	20
écrire	31	enchanter	29	entrer*	33	évaluer	29
écrouler (s')	29	encombrer	29	entretenir	84	évanouir (s')	39
édifier	20	encourager	46	entrevoir	93	évaporer	29
éduquer	29	encourir	17	énommer	35	éveiller	29
effacer	13	endetter	29	envahir	39	éventer	29
effarer	29	endocriner	29	envelopper	29	évertuer (s')	29
		endommager	46	envisager	46		

éviter	29	feindre	61	frémir	39	grimper	29
évoluer	29	feinter	29	fréquenter	29	grincer	13
évoquer	29	fêler	29	friser ¹⁵	81	griser	29
exagérer	35	féliciter	29	friser	29	grogner	29
exalter	29	fendre	89	frissonner	29	grommeler	5
examiner	29	ferler	29	froisser	29	gronder	29
exaspérer	35	fermenter	29	frôler	29	grossir	39
excéder	35	fermer	29	froncer	13	grouiller	29
excepter	29	fêter	29	frotter	29	grouper	29
exciter	29	feuilleter	42	frustrer	29	guérir	39
exclamer (s')	29	fiancer	13	fuir	40	guerroyer	54
exclure	14	ficeler	5	fumer	29	guetter	29
excommunier	20	ficher	29	fusiller	29	guider	29
excuser	29	fier	20	gâcher	29	guinder	29
exécrer	35	figer	46	gagner	29	habiller	29
exécuter	29	filer	29	galoper	29	habiter	29
exempter	29	fileter	2	garantir	39	habituier	29
exhiber	29	financer	13	garder	29	hacher	29
exhorter	29	finir	39	garer	29	haïr	41
exiger	46	fixer	29	garnir	39	haïr	2
exiler	29	flairer	29	gaspiller	29	handicaper	29
exister	29	flamber	29	gâter	29	hanter	29
exonérer	35	flâner	29	gauchir	39	harceler	2
expédier	20	flanquer	29	gaufre	29	harmoniser	29
expérimenter	29	flatter	29	gausser (se)	29	hasarder	29
expirer	29	fléchir	39	geindre	61	hâter	29
expliquer	29	flétrir	39	geler	44	hausser	29
exploiter	29	fleurir ¹⁴	39	gémir	39	héberger	46
exploser	29	flotter	29	gêner	29	hébéter	35
exporter	29	foisonner	29	généraliser	29	hennir	39
exposer	29	fomenter	29	gérer	35	hérissier	29
exprimer	29	foncer	13	giboyer	54	hériter	29
expulser	29	fonctionner	29	gifler	29	hésiter	29
exterminer	29	fonder	29	giver	29	heurter	29
extraire	86	fondre	70	glacer	13	hocher	29
exulter	29	forcer	13	glisser	29	honorer	29
fabriquer	29	forger	46	glorifier	20	horrifier	20
fâcher	29	formaliser (se)	29	gommer	29	huer	29
faciliter	29	former	29	gonfler	29	humaniser	29
façonner	29	formuler	29	goûter	29	humidifier	20
facturer	29	fortifier	20	gouverner	29	humilier	20
faillir ¹³	page 107	foudroyer	54	gracier	20	hurler	29
faire	37	fouetter	29	grandir	39	hypnotiser	29
falloir	38	fouiller	29	gratifier	20	idéatiser	29
falsifier	20	fourmillier	29	gratter	29	identifier	20
familiariser	29	fournir	39	graver	29	ignorer	29
farcir	39	fournir	29	graver	29	illuminer	29
fasciner	29	fourvoyer	54	greffer	29	illustrer	29
fatiguer	29	fracasser	29	grêler	29	imaginer	29
faucher	29	franchir	39	griffonner	29	imiter	29
faulter	29	frapper	29	grignoter	29	immigrer	29
fausser	29	frayer	60	griller	29	immiscer (s')	13
favoriser	29	freiner	29	grimacer	13	immobiliser	29

immoler	29	intituler	29	lubrifier	20	meurtrir	39
impatier	29	intriguer	29	lutter	29	miauler	29
impliquer	29	introduire	24	mâcher	29	mijoter	29
implorer	29	inventer	29	machiner	29	mimer	29
importer	29	invertir	39	magnifier	20	miner	29
impressionner	29	investir	39	maigrir	39	minimiser	29
imprimer	29	inviter	29	maintenir	84	mobiliser	29
improviser	29	invoquer	29	maîtriser	29	modeler	2
inaugurer	29	irriter	29	majorer	29	modérer	35
inciter	29	isoler	29	malfaire	37	moderniser	29
incliner	29	jaillir	39	malmenier	44	modifier	20
inclure ¹⁶	14	jaser	29	maltraiter	29	moisir	39
incommoder	29	jaunir	39	manger	46	moissonner	29
incorporer	29	jeter	42	manier	20	mollir	39
incriminer	29	jeûner	29	manifester	29	monnayer	60
inculper	29	joindre	43	manigancer	13	monopoliser	29
indiquer	29	jouer	29	manipuler	29	monter*	49
induire	24	jouer	39	manœuvrer	29	montrer	29
infecter	29	jurer	46	manquer	29	moquer (se)	29
infeaster	29	jumeler	5	manufacturer	29	mordre	50
infirmer	29	jurer	29	manutentionner	29	morfondre (se)	70
infliger	46	justifier	20	marcher	29	mortifier	20
influencer	13	labourer	29	marier	20	motiver	29
informer	29	lacer	13	marquer	29	moucher	29
ingénieur (s')	20	lâcher	29	marteler	2	moudre	51
inhaler	29	laisser	29	masquer	29	mouiller	29
initier	20	lamentar (se)	29	massacrer	29	mourir	52
injurier	20	lancer	13	masser	29	mouvoir ¹⁷	32
innover	29	languir	39	matérialiser	29	muer	29
inoculer	29	larmoyer	54	maudire	47	multiplier	20
inonder	29	laver	29	maugréer	19	munir	39
inquiéter	35	lécher	35	mécaniser	29	mûrir	39
inscrire	31	légaliser	29	méconnaître	15	murmurer	29
insensibiliser	29	légiférer	35	mécontenter	29	museler	5
insérer	35	lésiner	29	médire	28	muter	29
insinuer	29	lever	44	méditer	29	mutiler	29
insister	29	libérer	35	méfaire	37	mystifier	20
inspecter	29	licencier	20	méfier (se)	20	nager	46
inspirer	29	lier	20	mélanger	46	naître	53
installer	29	ligoter	29	mêler	29	nantir	39
instaurer	29	limer	29	menacer	13	narrer	29
instruire	24	limiter	29	ménager	46	naviguer	29
insulter	29	liquéfier	20	mendier	20	navrer	29
insurger (s')	46	liquider	29	mener	44	nécessiter	29
intégrer	35	lire	45	mentionner	29	négliger	46
intensifier	20	livrer	29	mentir	78	négociier	20
intercéder	35	loger	46	méprendre (se)	66	neiger	46
interdire	28	lorgner	29	mépriser	29	nettoyer	54
intéresser	29	lotir	39	mériter	29	nier	20
interloquer	29	loucher	29	mesurer	29	niveler	5
interroger	46	louer	29	mettre	48	noircir	39
interrompre	76	louper	29	meubler	29	nommer	29
intervenir	90	louvoyer	54	meugler	29	normaliser	29

noter	29	partir	58	pomper	29	protester	29
nouer	29	parvenir	90	ponctuer	29	prouver	29
nourrir	39	passer*	59	pondre	70	provenir	90
noyer	54	passionner	29	porter	29	publier	20
nuire ¹⁸	24	patienter	29	poser	29	punir	39
numéroter	29	pâtir	39	posséder	35	purifier	20
obéir	39	pauser	29	poster	29	qualifier	20
objecter	29	paver	29	poudroyer	54	quereller	29
obliger	46	pavoiser	29	pourfendre	89	questionner	29
oblitérer	35	payer	60	pourrir	39	quêter	29
obscurcir	39	pêcher	29	poursuivre	82	quitter	29
obséder	35	pécher	35	pousser	29	rabattre	10
observer	29	peigner	29	pouvoir¹⁹	65	raccommoder	29
obstiner (s')	29	peindre	61	pratiquer	29	raccompagner	29
obtenir	84	peler	44	précéder	35	raccorder	29
occuper	29	pencher	29	prêcher	29	raccourcir	39
octroyer	54	pendre	89	préciser	29	raccrocher	29
offenser	29	pénétrer	35	prédire	28	racheter	2
offrir	55	penser	29	préférer	35	racler	29
omettre	48	percer	13	préjuger	46	racoler	29
opérer	35	percevoir	68	prélever	44	raconter	29
opposer	29	perdre	62	préméditer	29	raffermir	39
opprimer	29	perfectionner	29	prendre	66	raffiner	29
ordonner	29	perforer	29	préparer	29	rafler	29
organiser	29	périr	39	prescrire	31	rafraîchir	39
orner	29	permettre	48	présenter	29	ragaillardir	39
orthographier	20	persécuter	29	préserver	29	raidir	39
osciller	29	persévérer	35	présider	29	railler	29
oser	29	persister	29	présentir	78	raisonner	29
ôter	29	persuader	29	présumer	29	rajeunir	39
oublier	20	pervertir	39	prétendre	89	rajouter	29
outrager	46	peser	44	prêter	29	rajuster	29
ouvrir	56	pétrifier	20	prévaloir ²⁰	88	ralentir	39
oxyder	29	pétrir	39	prévenir ¹	90	rallier	20
pacifier	20	peupler	29	prévoir ²¹	93	rallonger	46
pâler	39	photographier	20	prier	20	rallumer	29
palper	29	picoter	29	priver	29	ramasser	29
palpiter	29	piéger	67	privilégier	20	ramener	44
panser	29	piétiner	29	procéder	35	ramollir	39
parachever	44	pincer	13	proclamer	29	ranimer	29
parachuter	29	placer	13	procréer	19	rappeler	5
paraître	57	plaider	29	produire	24	rapporter	29
paralyser	29	plaindre	18	profiter	29	rapprocher	29
parcourir	17	plaire	63	progresser	29	raser	29
pardonner	29	plaisanter	29	projeter	42	rassembler	29
parer	29	planifier	20	prolonger	46	rasséréner	35
parfondre	70	plaquer	29	promener	44	rassurer	29
parfumer	29	pleurer	29	promettre	48	rater	29
parier	20	pleuvoir	64	promouvoir ²²	32	rationaliser	29
parler	29	plier	29	prononcer	13	rattraper	29
parquer	29	plonger	46	proposer	29	ravir	39
partager	46	polir	39	proscrire	31	ravitailler	29
participer	29	polluer	29	protéger	67	réagir	39

réaliser	29	réfuter	29	renifler	29	retourner*	73
rebattre	10	regagner	29	renommer	29	retrancher	29
rebondir	39	regaillardir	39	renoncer	13	retransmettre	48
rebuter	29	regarder	29	renouer	29	rétrécir	39
receler	2	régénérer	35	renouveler	5	retrousser	29
recenser	29	régir	39	renvoyer	29	retrouver	29
recevoir	68	régler	35	renseigner	29	réunir	39
réchapper	29	régner	35	renter*	69	réussir	39
réchauffer	29	regretter	29	renverser	29	revaloir	88
rechercher	29	regrouper	29	renvoyer	34	réveiller	29
récherir	29	réhabiliter	29	réorganiser	29	révéler	35
réclamer	29	réhabituer	29	répandre	89	revendiquer	29
récolter	29	rehausser	29	réparaître	57	revendre	89
recommander	29	réimprimer	29	réparer	29	revenir	74
recommencer	13	réintégrer	35	repartir	58	rêver	29
récompenser	29	rejaillir	39	répartir	39	révéler	35
réconcilier	20	rejeter	42	repeindre	61	revêtir	91
reconduire	24	rejoindre	43	repandre	89	réviser	29
réconforter	29	réjouir	39	repentir (se)	78	revivre	92
reconnaître	15	relâcher	29	reperdre	62	revoir	93
reconquérir	3	relancer	13	répéter	35	révolter	29
reconstruire	24	reléguer	35	répondre	70	rhâbler	29
reconvertir	39	relever	44	repousser	29	ridiculiser	29
recopier	20	relier	20	repréparer	66	rigoler	29
recoudre	16	reliure ²³	45	représenter	29	rire	75
recourir	17	remanier	24	reproduire	24	risquer	29
recouvrir	56	remarier	20	répudier	20	rivaliser	29
récréer	19	requérir	20	requérir	3	rogner	29
récrier (se)	20	réserver	29	réserver	29	rompre	76
récrire	31	résider	29	résider	29	ronfler	29
rectifier	20	résigner	20	résigner	29	ronger	46
recueillir	23	résoir	20	résoir	20	rôtir	39
recuire	24	résister	48	résister	29	rougir	39
reculer	29	résonner	44	résonner	29	rouler	29
recupérer	35	remonter*	49	résoudre	71	roupséter	35
recycler	29	remontre	29	respirer	29	rouvrir	56
redescendre	25	remordre	50	resplendir	39	ruiner	29
rédiger	46	remorquer	29	ressaisir	39	saccager	46
redire	28	remoudre	51	resssembler	29	saisir	39
redoubler	29	remplacer	13	resssembler	5	salir	39
redouter	29	remplir	39	ressentir	78	saluer	29
redresser	29	remployer	54	ressortir	80	sanctifier	20
réduire	24	remporter	29	rester	72	sangloter	29
refaire	37	remuer	29	restreindre	61	satisfaire	37
référer	35	renaître ²⁴	53	résulter	29	sauter	29
réfermer	29	renchérir	39	résumer	29	sauvegarder	29
réfléchir	39	rencontrer	29	resurgir	39	sauver	29
réfléter	35	rendormir	30	rétablir	39	savoir	77
refondre	70	rendre	8	retaper	29	scier	20
réformer	29	renfermer	29	retarder	29	scinder	29
refroidir	39	renfler	29	retenir	84	scintiller	29
réfugier (se)	20	renforcer	13	retirer	29	sécher	35
refuser	29	renier	20	retomber	85	secouer	29

secourir	17	suer	29	tournoyer	54	vendre	89
séduire	24	suffire	81	tousser	29	venger	46
sembler	29	suggérer	35	tracasser	29	venir	90
semer	44	suivre	82	tracer	13	verdir	39
sentir	78	supplier	20	traduire	24	verdoyer	54
séparer	29	supposer	29	trahir	39	vérifier	20
serrer	29	surcharger	46	traîner	29	vernir	39
sertir	39	surenchérir	39	traire	86	verrouiller	29
servir	79	surfaire	37	traiter	29	verser	29
sévir	39	surgeler	2	transcrire	31	vêtir	91
sevrer	44	surgir	39	transférer	35	vexer	29
siéger	67	surmonter ¹	49	transformer	29	vibrer	29
siffler	29	surpasser	59	transmettre	48	vider	29
signaler	29	surprendre	66	transparaître	57	vieillir	39
signer	29	surveiller	29	transpirer	29	violier	29
signifier	20	survenir	90	transplanter	29	virer	29
simplifier	20	survivre	92	transporter	29	viser	29
simuler	29	susciter	29	traquer	29	visiter	29
soigner	29	suspendre	89	travailler	29	visser	29
sombrer	29	tacher	29	traverser	29	vitrifier	20
sommeiller	29	tâcher	29	trébucher	29	vitupérer	35
songer	46	tailler	29	trembler	29	vivifier	20
sonner	29	taire (se)	83	tremper	29	vivre	92
sortir*	80	taper	29	tricher	29	vociférer	35
souffrir	55	tâter	29	tricoter	29	voiler	29
souhaiter	29	taxer	29	trier	20	voir	93
souiller	29	teindre	61	triompher	29	voler	29
soulager	46	teinter	29	tripoter	29	vomir	39
soulever	44	téléphoner	29	tromper	29	voter	29
souigner	29	téléviser	29	troquer	29	vouer	29
soumettre	48	témoigner	29	trotter	29	vouloir	94
soupçonner	29	tendre	89	troubler	29	vouvoyer	54
soupeser	44	tenir	84	trouer	29	voyager	46
sourire	75	tenter	29	trouver	29	vrombir	39
souscrire	31	terminer	29	truffer	29	vulgariser	29
sous-entendre	89	ternir	39	truquer	29	zébrer	35
soustraire	86	terrasser	29	tuer	29	zézayer	60
soutenir	84	terrifier	20	tutoyer	54	zigzaguer	29
souvenir (se)	84	téter	35	ulcérer	35		
spécialiser	29	tiédir	39	unifier	20		
spécifier	20	timbrer	29	unir	39		
standardiser	29	tirer	29	urbaniser	29		
stationner	29	tolérer	35	user	29		
stériliser	29	tomber	85	usiner	29		
stimuler	29	tondre	70	utiliser	29		
stupéfier	20	tonner	29	vacciner	29		
subir	39	tordre	50	vaincre	87		
submerger	46	torpiller	29	valoir	88		
subsister	29	tortiller	29	vanter	29		
substituer	29	torturer	29	varier	20		
subvenir ¹	90	toucher	29	végéter	35		
succéder	35	tourmenter	29	veiller	29		
sucer	13	tourner	29	vendanger	46		

Notes

- 1) Auxiliary = **avoir**.
- 2) Auxiliary = **être**.
- 3) Only infinitive and 3rd persons of each tense used.
- 4) Past participle: **absous, absoute**.
- 5) Conjugated with either **avoir** or **être**.
- 6) No circumflex on: **j'accrois, tu accrois, and accrus**.
- 7) Hardly used except in the infinitive and the 3rd persons of the present, future and conditional.
- 8) Past participle: **circoncis**.
- 9) Past participle: **confit**.
- 10) No circumflex on: **je décrois, tu décrois, and décrus**.
- 11) When **demeurer** means *to live*, the auxiliary is **avoir**; when it means *to remain*, the auxiliary is **être**.
- 12) Past participle: **dissous, dissoute**.
- 13) Present participle: **faillant**; past participle: **failli**; future: **je faillirai, etc**; conditional: **je faillirais, etc**. NB: **J'ai failli tomber** = I nearly fell.
- 14) When **fleurir** means *to prosper*, the present participle is **florissant**, and the imperfect is **florissait**.
- 15) Past participle: **frit**; used mainly in the present tense singular and in compound tenses.
- 16) Past participle: **inclus**.
- 17) Past participle: **mû, mue, mus, mues**.
- 18) Past participle: **nui**.
- 19) In questions, **je peux** can be replaced by **je puis**: **Puis-je vous aider?** May I help you?
- 20) Subjunctive: **je prévale, etc**.
- 21) Future: **je prévoirai, etc**; conditional: **je prévoirais, etc**.
- 22) Used only in the infinitive, present and past participles, and compound tenses.
- 23) Past participle: **relui**.
- 24) No past participle, no compound tenses.

The easiest way to start learning French

Easy Learning French Grammar is part of the bestselling and acclaimed Easy Learning range, and is ideal for school and home study

Easy to use

all you need to know about French grammar and verbs


The passive

What is the passive?
The passive is a form of the verb where the person or thing being talked about is the subject of the sentence, and the person or thing doing the action is the object.

Easy to read

clear layout with colour

des souvenirs
des amis

 Note that **des** has two meanings, such as 'some' or 'of'.
For more information, see the 'Des' section.

Easy to understand

thousands of examples show you the right way to use French grammar

Je t'aime

Je t'aime changes to *Je t'aim* for most words starting with a vowel.

Je n'ai pas d'argent
Je n'ai pas de temps

Buy this book and start using Collins dictionaries and study packs online for free at www.collinslanguage.com*

* see inside for terms and conditions

£6.99 CAN\$13.95

ISBN 978-0-00-719644-9



9 780007 196449 >

www.collinslanguage.com